

# HANDBOOK



CITROËN C4



# On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

## MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with CITROËN.

---

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/dbb>

Select:

- the language,
  - the vehicle, its body style,
  - the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.
- 

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.



This handbook has been designed to help to make the most of your C4 in all circumstances and in complete safety.

Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C4 range.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

#### Key

! safety warning

i additional information

contributes to the protection of the environment

CITROËN has a presence on every continent, a complete product range, bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation, for a modern and creative approach to mobility.

We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, getting to know each system, each control, each setting, makes your trips, your journeys more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| Overview   | Access  | Visibility  |
| Eco-driving  | Remote control key<br>"Keyless Entry and Starting" system<br>Alarm<br>Doors<br>Boot<br>Electric windows<br>Panoramic sunroof  | 53<br>59<br>67<br>71<br>72<br>75<br>78  |
| Monitoring   | Comfort   | Lighting controls<br>Automatic illumination of headlamps<br>Welcome lighting<br>Headlamp adjustment<br>Directional lighting<br>Wiper controls<br>Automatic rain sensitive wipers<br>Courtesy lamps<br>Interior mood lighting<br>Boot lamp |
| Multifunction screens  | 1 Ventilation<br>12 Manual air conditioning<br>15 Dual-zone digital air conditioning<br>16 Front demist - defrost<br>16 Rear screen demist - defrost<br>29 Front seats<br>34 Rear seats<br>36 Mirrors<br>36 Steering wheel adjustment | 79<br>82<br>84<br>89<br>90<br>91<br>96<br>98<br>100   |
| 2 Front interior fittings<br>37 Centre consoles<br>39 Front armrest<br>44 Rear fittings<br>49 Boot fittings<br>49 Luggage cover (enterprise version) | 5 Fittings  | 150<br>150<br>150<br>151<br>152<br>153<br>154<br>158  |
| Monochrome screen A<br>Monochrome screen C<br>Touch screen tablet<br>Trip computer   | 4 Child safety  | 150<br>150<br>150<br>151<br>152<br>153<br>154<br>158  |
|  | 5 Safety  | 150<br>150<br>150<br>151<br>152<br>153<br>154<br>158  |

|  |     |  |     |                            |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|----------------------------|-----|
| Driving  | 9   | Checks   | 10  | Technical data             | 12  |
| Driving recommendations  | 162 | Fuel tank  | 208 | Petrol engines             | 275 |
| Starting-switching off the engine with the key                                 | 163 | Misfuel prevention (Diesel)                      | 210 | Petrol weights             | 277 |
| Starting-switching off the engine with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system | 166 | Running out of fuel (Diesel)                     | 211 | Diesel engines             | 279 |
| Electric parking brake   | 170 | Bonnet   | 212 | Diesel weights             | 281 |
| Manual parking brake   | 177 | Petrol engines                                   | 213 | Dimensions                 | 285 |
| Manual gearbox   | 178 | Diesel engines                                   | 214 | Identification markings    | 286 |
| Electronic gearbox   | 179 | Checking levels                                  | 215 |                            |     |
| Automatic gearbox  | 183 | Checks   | 219 |                            |     |
| Hill start assist  | 188 | AdBlue® additive and SCR system (BlueHDI Diesel) | 221 |                            |     |
| Gear shift indicator   | 189 |  |     |                            |     |
| Tyre under-inflation detection   | 190 |  |     |                            |     |
| Stop & Start   | 192 |  |     |                            |     |
| Lane departure warning system  | 195 | Practical information                            | 11  | Audio and telematics       |     |
| Blind spot sensors   | 196 | Temporary puncture repair kit                    | 229 | Emergency or assistance    | 287 |
| Memorising speeds  | 199 | Changing a wheel                                 | 234 | 7-inch touch screen tablet | 289 |
| Speed limiter  | 201 | Snow chains                                      | 241 | Audio system               | 359 |
| Cruise control   | 203 | Changing a bulb                                  | 242 |                            |     |
| Parking sensors  | 205 | Changing a fuse                                  | 251 |                            |     |
|  |     | 12 V battery                                     | 256 |                            |     |
|  |     | Energy economy mode                              | 260 |                            |     |
|  |     | Changing a wiper blade                           | 261 |                            |     |
|  |     | Fitting roof bars                                | 262 |                            |     |
|  |     | Very cold climate screen                         | 262 |                            |     |
|  |     | Towing the vehicle                               | 263 |                            |     |
|  |     | Towing a trailer                                 | 265 |                            |     |
|  |     | Towbar with quickly detachable towball           | 267 |                            |     |
|  |     | Audio pre-equipment                              | 272 |                            |     |
|  |     | Accessories                                      | 273 |                            |     |
|  |     |  |     | Alphabetical index         |     |

# Exterior

|                                |                  |  |
|--------------------------------|------------------|--|
| Keyless Entry and Starting     | 59-64            |  |
| Remote control                 | 53-58, 64        |  |
| - opening / closing            |                  |  |
| - back-up control              |                  |  |
| - battery                      |                  |  |
| Alarm                          | 67-70            |  |
| Wiper controls                 | 128-132          |  |
| Changing a wiper blade         | 261              |  |
| Boot                           | 54, 59, 72-74    |  |
| Temporary puncture repair kit  | 229-233          |  |
| Changing a wheel               | 234-240          |  |
| - tools                        |                  |  |
| - removing / refitting         |                  |  |
| Topping up the AdBlue additive | 221-225, 226-228 |  |
| Changing bulbs                 | 248-250          |  |
| - rear lamps                   |                  |  |
| - 3rd brake lamp               |                  |  |
| - number plate lamp            |                  |  |
| Parking sensors                | 205-206          |  |
| Towbar                         | 265-266          |  |
| Quickly detachable towball     | 267-271          |  |
| Towing                         | 263-264          |  |
| Accessories                    | 273-274          |  |
| Roof bars                      | 262              |  |
| Panoramic sunroof              | 78               |  |
| Door mirrors                   | 98-99            |  |
| Blind spot sensors             | 196-198          |  |
| Lighting controls              | 118-123          |  |
| Headlamp adjustment            | 125              |  |
| Welcome lighting               | 124              |  |
| Directional lighting systems   | 126-127          |  |
| Changing bulbs                 | 242-247          |  |
| - front lamps                  |                  |  |
| - front foglamps               |                  |  |
| - side repeaters               |                  |  |
| Doors                          | 65-66, 71        |  |
| Keyless Entry and Starting     | 59-64            |  |
| - opening / closing            |                  |  |
| - emergency control            |                  |  |
| Child lock                     | 149              |  |
| Electric windows               | 75-77            |  |
| Fuel tank                      | 208-209          |  |
| Misfuel prevention             | 210              |  |
| Braking assistance             | 151              |  |
| Trajectory control             | 152-153          |  |
| Tyre under-inflation detection | 190-191          |  |
| Tyre pressures                 | 233, 286         |  |
| Snow chains                    | 241              |  |

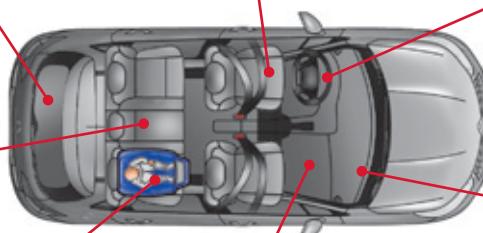
# Interior

Boot fittings 113-116  
- rear parcel shelf  
- hooks  
- 12 V socket  
- torch  
- lashing eyes  
- storage compartment  
Luggage cover (C4 enterprise) 117

Rear seats 96-97  
Rear fittings 112  
- 12 V socket  
- rear armrest  
- ski flap

Child seats 135-148  
ISOFIX mountings 144-147

Front seats 91-95  
Seat belts 154-157



Airbags 158-161

Glove box 102  
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 137-139, 159

Front fittings 101-111  
- auxiliary socket / USB port  
- 12 V socket  
- front armrest  
- 230 V / 50 Hz socket  
- mats  
- storage drawers

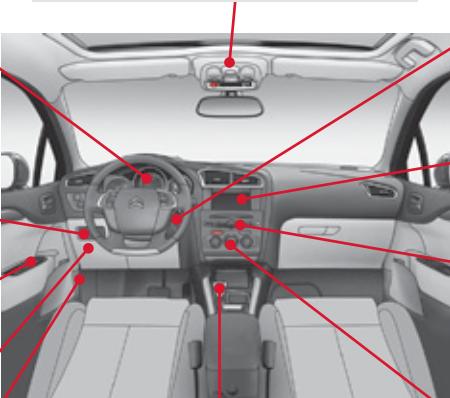
# Instruments and controls

|                                      |       |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Instrument panels                    | 12-15 |
| Warning lamps                        | 16-28 |
| Indicators                           | 29-32 |
| Setting buttons                      | 33-36 |
| - trip distance recorder             |       |
| - dashboard lighting                 |       |
| dimmer / black panel                 |       |
| - customisation of dials and screens |       |

|                     |       |
|---------------------|-------|
| Adjusting headlamps | 125   |
| Door mirrors        | 98-99 |
| Electric windows    | 75-77 |

|                    |         |
|--------------------|---------|
| Dashboard fuses    | 251-254 |
| Opening the bonnet | 212     |

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| Rear view mirror            | 100 |
| Courtesy lamps              | 133 |
| Interior mood lighting      | 134 |
| Blind for panoramic sunroof | 78  |



|                    |              |
|--------------------|--------------|
| Manual gearbox     | 178          |
| Electronic gearbox | 179-182      |
| Automatic gearbox  | 183-187      |
| Parking brake      | 170-176, 177 |

|  |         |
|--|---------|
| Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting using the key | 163-165 |
| Steering lock / Starting using the START/STOP button     | 166-168 |

|                       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|
| Multifunction screens | 37-48 |
|-----------------------|-------|

|                         |         |
|-------------------------|---------|
| Audio system            | 359-392 |
| Setting the date / time | 38, 43  |
| Touch screen tablet     | 289-358 |
| Setting the date / time | 48      |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| Ventilation                            | 79-81     |
| Manual air conditioning                | 82-83, 89 |
| Digital air conditioning               | 84-88, 89 |
| Demisting / Defrosting the rear screen | 90        |

# Instruments and controls

## Multifunction steering wheel

Speed limiter  
Cruise control  
Memorising speeds

201-202  
203-204  
199-200

Lighting controls

118-123

Adjusting the steering wheel

100

Audio and telephone controls  
for the Audio system  
Audio and telephone controls  
for the Touch screen tablet

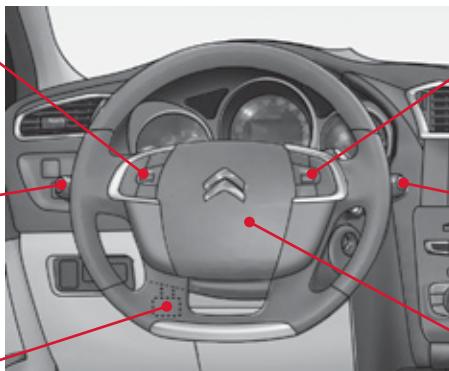
361  
293

Wiper controls  
Trip computer

128-132  
49-52

Horn

150



# Instruments and controls

## Central switch panels

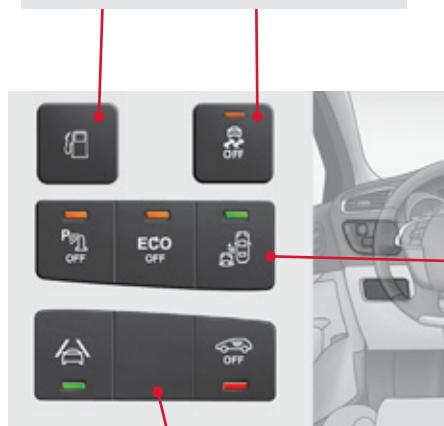
|  |              |
|--|--------------|
| Emergency call   | 153, 287     |
| Seat belt / front passenger airbag<br>warning lamp display | 155-156, 159 |
| Access to CITROËN<br>services                              | 153, 287     |



|                            |       |
|----------------------------|-------|
| Hazard warning lamps       | 150   |
| Central locking            | 65-66 |
| Black panel (black screen) | 36    |

## Side switch panels

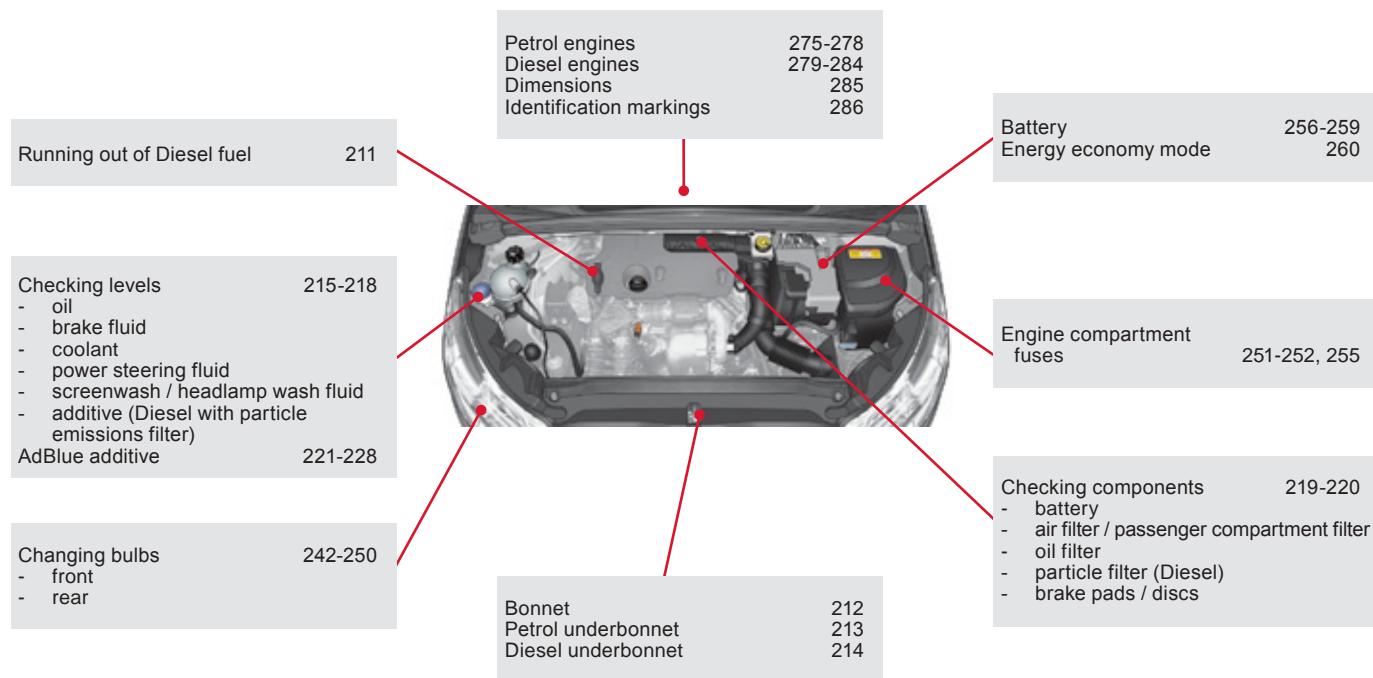
|                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| Fuel filler flap | 208-209 |
| DSC/ASR system   | 152-153 |



|                    |         |
|--------------------|---------|
| Parking sensors    | 205-206 |
| Stop & Start       | 192-194 |
| Blind spot sensors | 196-198 |

|                               |       |
|-------------------------------|-------|
| Lane departure warning system | 195   |
| Alarm volumetric monitoring   | 67-70 |

# Technical data - Maintenance



# Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

## Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

## Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

## Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

## Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference. Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

## Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDI Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

# Type 1 instrument panel



## Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.
6. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
7. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
9. Time (a) / range (miles or km) for fuel (b) or the AdBlue additive and SCR system (c).

## Control buttons

- A. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
- B. Reset service indicator or trip mileage recorder.
- A and B. Setting the time and selecting units.

## Type 2 instrument panel



### Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.
6. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
7. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
9. Range (miles or km) for the remaining fuel (a) or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system (b).

### Control buttons

- A. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
- B. Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

# Customisable colour instrument panel



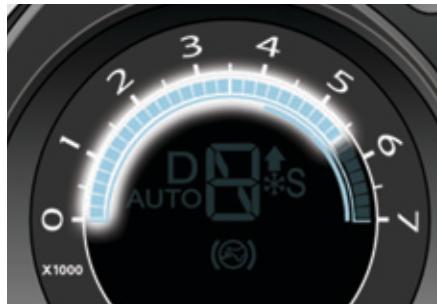
## Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an electronic or automatic gearbox.
3. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
8. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
9. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
10. Range (miles or km) for the remaining fuel (a) or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system (b).

## Control buttons

- A. Dial COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the dials.
- B. Screen COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the screens.
- C. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
- D. Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

## Rev counter



Approaching the maximum engine speed, the bars flash to indicate to you the need to change up a gear.

**i** When switching the ignition on or off, the speedometer needle and the bars of the rev counter and fuel gauge carry out a full sweep and then return to 0.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

### When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp in question.

### Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

### Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction which requires action on the part of the driver. The warning comes on in the instrument panel.

! If your vehicle has a screen, a warning lamp coming on is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the problem. If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

| Warning/indicator lamp   | is on   | Cause  | Action/Observations  |
|--|---|--|--|
|  <b>STOP</b>                        | fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen. | Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system. | Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.         |
|  <b>Maximum coolant temperature</b> | fixed red.  | The temperature of the cooling system is too high.   | Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop. |

| Warning/indicator lamp   | is on   | Cause   | Action/Observations   |
|--|---|---|---|
|  | <b>Engine oil pressure</b><br>fixed.                            | There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.  | You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  |
|  | <b>Battery charge</b><br>fixed.                                 | The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).       | The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.<br>If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  |
|  | <b>Braking</b><br>fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp. | The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.   | You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|  |   | fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released. | You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.   |
|  |   | fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.  | You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  |

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on   | Cause  | Action/Observations   |
|---|---|--|---|
|  <b>Electric parking brake</b>   | flashing.   | The electric parking brake is not applied automatically.<br>The application/release is faulty. | You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.<br>Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position <b>P</b> for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|   <b>Electric parking brake fault</b> | fixed.  | The electric parking brake has a fault.  | Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.<br>For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.  |
|  <b>Door(s) open</b>   | fixed if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).                                      | A door or the boot is still open.  | Close the door or boot.   |
|   | fixed and accompanied by an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h). |  |   |
|  <b>Seat belt not fastened/unfastened*</b>   | fixed, then flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.                | The driver or front passenger has not buckled or has unbuckled their seat belt.                | Pull on the belt in question and insert the tongue in the buckle.<br>This warning repeats the seat belt information given by the roof console warning lamps.  |
| At least one rear passenger has unbuckled their seat belt.  |   |  |   |

\* According to country.

| Warning/indicator lamp  |                | is on  | Cause   | Action/Observations  |
|---|----------------|--|---|--|
|  <b>SERVICE</b>                 | <b>Service</b> | temporarily, accompanied by a message.   | One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.  | Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen.<br>You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or a discharged remote control battery.<br>For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |
|   |                | fixed, accompanied by a message.   | One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.  | Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.   |
|   |                | fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner. | The servicing interval has been exceeded.   | Only on BlueHDI Diesel versions.<br>Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.   |
|  <b>Foot on the brake pedal</b> |                | fixed.   | The brake pedal is not pressed.   | With an electronic gearbox, press the brake pedal to start the engine (lever in position N).<br>If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.   |
|   |                | flashing.  | With an electronic gearbox, if you hold the vehicle on a rising incline using the accelerator for too long, the clutch overheats. | Use the brake pedal and/or the electric parking brake.   |

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on  | Cause   | Action/Observations  |
|---|--|---|--|
|  <b>Engine autodiagnosis system</b>    | flashing.  | The engine management system has a fault.   | Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.   |
|   | fixed.   | The emission control system has a fault.  | The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.  |
|  <b>Low fuel level</b>                 | fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. | <p>When it first comes on there remains approximately <b>6 litres</b> of fuel in the tank.</p> <p>At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.</p> | <p>Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.</p> <p>Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards <b>"0"</b>.</p> <p>Fuel tank capacity: approximately <b>60 litres</b>.</p> <p>Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.</p> |
|  <b>Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)</b> | fixed.   | The anti-lock braking system has a fault.   | The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.   |

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on   | Cause   | Action/Observations  |
|---|---|---|--|
|  <b>Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)</b>   | flashing.   | Regulation by the system is active.   | The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.   |
|   | fixed, associated with illumination of the indicator lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. | The DSC/ASR or hill start assist system has a fault.  | Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.   |
|  <b>Power steering</b>  | fixed.  | The power steering has a fault.   | Drive carefully at reduced speed.<br>Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.                            |
| <br> <b>Under-inflation</b> | fixed.  | The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.  | Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.<br>This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. |
|   | flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.   | The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.                  | Under-inflation detection is not assured.<br>Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.            |
|  <b>Directional headlamps</b>   | flashing.   | The directional headlamps system has a fault.   | Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.   |
|  <b>Foot on the clutch**</b>  | fixed.  | In the STOP mode of Stop & Start, changing to START mode is refused because the clutch pedal is not fully down. | You must declutch fully to allow the change to engine START mode.  |

\*\* Only on the type 1 instrument panel.

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on   | Cause  | Action/Observations  |
|---|---|--|--|
|  <b>Airbags</b>                                | temporarily.  | This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off. | This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.                   |
|   | fixed.  | One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.                   | Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.   |
|  <b>Presence of water in the Diesel fuel**</b> | fixed.  | The Diesel fuel filter contains water.   | Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines.<br>Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.                   |
|  <b>Particle filter (Diesel)</b>               | fixed, accompanied by an audible signal message on the risk of blockage of the particle filter.           | This indicates that the particle filter is starting to become saturated.           | As soon as driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. |
|   | fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low. | This indicates the low level of the additive reservoir.                            | Have the reservoir topped up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  |

\*\* Only on the type 1 instrument panel.

| Warning/indicator lamp | is on                             | Cause   | Action/Observations   |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| UREA                   | AdBlue® additive (BlueHDI Diesel) | fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.               | The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).<br><br>Have the AdBlue® additive tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.  |
| UREA<br>+<br>SERVICE   |                                   | flashing associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range. | The remaining driving range is between 0 and 375 miles (600 km).<br><br>You must <b>top-up the</b> AdBlue® additive tank to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> : go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.  |
|                        |                                   | flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented. | The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.<br><br>To be able to start the engine, you must <b>top-up the</b> AdBlue® additive tank: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself by referring to the corresponding section.<br>It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank. |

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on   | Cause  | Action/Observations   |
|---|---|--|---|
| <br>+<br><br>+<br> | <b>SCR emissions control system (BlueHDI Diesel)</b><br>fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. | A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.   | This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.                         |
|   | flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.               | After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.                 | Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop <b>without delay, to avoid a breakdown</b> .     |
|   | flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.  | You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine. | To be able to start the engine, you <b>must</b> call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. |

## Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation. It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on                         | Cause   | Action/Observations  |
|---|-------------------------------|---|--|
|  Left-hand direction indicator  | flashing with buzzer.         | The lighting stalk is pushed down.  |  |
|  Right-hand direction indicator | flashing with buzzer.         | The lighting stalk is pushed up.  |  |
|  Hazard warning lamps           | flashing with audible signal. | The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.                                       | The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously. |
|  Sidelamps                      | fixed.                        | The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.  |  |
|  Dipped beam headlamps          | fixed.                        | The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light. |  |
|  Main beam headlamps            | fixed.                        | The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.   | Pull the stalk again to return to dipped beam headlamps.   |
|  Front foglamps                 | fixed.                        | The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.                                    | Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.                 |
|  Rear foglamps                  | fixed.                        | The rear foglamps are on.   | Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.   |

| Warning/indicator lamp   | is on  | Cause  | Action/Observations   |
|--|--------|--|---|
|  <b>Parking brake</b>   | fixed. | The parking brake is applied or not properly released.   | Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the parking brake, refer to the "Parking brake" and "Electric parking brake" sections.  |
|  <b>Electric parking brake</b>  | fixed. | The electric parking brake is applied.   | Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric brake control. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.  |
|  <b>Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake</b> | fixed. | The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.     | Activate the function (according to country) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  |
|  <b>Diesel engine pre-heating</b>   | fixed. | The ignition switch is at the 2 <sup>nd</sup> position (Ignition on) or the "START/STOP" starting button has been pressed. | Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. Once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic or electronic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine. |

| Warning/indicator lamp  | is on  | Cause   | Action/Observations  |
|---|--|---|--|
|  <b>Automatic wiping</b>          | fixed.   | The wiper control is pushed downwards.  | Automatic front wiping is activated.<br>To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.        |
|  <b>Lighting dimmer</b>           | fixed.   | The lighting dimmer is making an adjustment.  | You can adjust the level of illumination of the instruments between 1 and 16.  |
|  <b>Passenger's airbag system</b> | fixed in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display. | The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the "ON" position.<br>The passenger's front airbag is activated.<br>In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat. | Move the control switch to the "OFF" position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag.<br>In this case, you can install a "rearward facing" child seat. |
|  <b>Stop &amp; Start</b>          | fixed.   | When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.   | The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.  |
|   | flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.                                  | STOP mode is temporarily unavailable.<br>or<br>START mode is invoked automatically.   | For more information on special cases with STOP mode and START mode, refer to the "Stop & Start" section.  |

## Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message on the multifunction screen.

| Warning/indicator lamp   | is on  | Cause  | Action/Observations   |
|--|--|--|---|
|  <b>Passenger's airbag system</b> | fixed in the instrument panel and/or seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display. | The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the " <b>OFF</b> " position.<br>The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. | Set the control to the " <b>ON</b> " position to activate the passenger's front airbag.<br>In this case, do not fit a child seat in the rearward facing position. |

## Engine oil level indicator\*



On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, at the same time as the servicing information.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.



**Oil level correct**



**Oil level incorrect**

This is indicated by the flashing of "OIL" or the display of a message, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal. If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine. Refer to the "Checking levels" section.



**Oil level indicator fault**

This is signalled by the flashing of "OIL--" or the display of a message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored. If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet. Refer to the "Checking levels" section.

\* Depending on version.

## Service indicator

System that informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.

The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last service indicator zero reset, according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

For BlueHDI Diesel versions, the level of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account, depending on the country of sale.



### More than 1800 miles (3000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the instrument panel central screen.

### Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line or a specific message in the instrument panel central screen indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.

**For example:** 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



### Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

**Example:** 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



## Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.

**Example:** the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



- i** The spanner comes on if you have exceeded the specified time interval since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule. For BlueHDI Diesel versions, the spanner may also come on before the normal service point, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.

A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on.**



For BlueHDI Diesel versions, this alert is also accompanied by the fixed illumination of the Service warning lamp when the ignition is switched on.



## Service indicator zero reset

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,
- ☞ press and hold the ".../000" trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ when the screen indicates "=/0" and the spanner disappears, release the button.



Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

## Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.



### Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



### Trip distance recorder

Measures the distance travelled since it was last reset to zero by the driver.

- With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

## Setting the time and the time format in the instrument panel with the clock



On the type 1 instrument panel (without audio system), to adjust the time, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the minutes flash,
- ☞ press **A** to increase the minutes or **B** to reduce the minutes,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the hours flash,
- ☞ press **A** to increase the hours or **B** to reduce the hours,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: 24 H or 12 H is displayed and flashes,

- ☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the format,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from time setting.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display.

## Setting units in the instrument panel with the clock

On the type 1 instrument panel (without audio system), to change the display units, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously for three seconds: km/h or mph flashes,
- ☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the units,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from setting units.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display.

## Setting the time and units in the multifunction screen

The other instrument panels are associated with an audio system and a multifunction screen. Refer to the corresponding screens.

## Lighting dimmer



Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on in night mode.

### Activation

- ☞ Press this button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
  - ☞ When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release this button, then press again to increase it.
- or
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release this button, then press again to reduce it.
  - ☞ When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release this button.



This indicator and the lighting value appear in the middle of the instrument panel during adjustment to show the setting from the 16 levels available.

### Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button does not have any effect.

## Black panel (black screen)



System allowing certain screens to be switched off for night driving.

The instrument panel remains on with the vehicle speed, electronic or automatic gearbox gear selected, cruise control or speed limiter information, if in use, and the low fuel alerts as appropriate.

If there is an alert or a change in a function or to a setting, the black panel mode is interrupted.

### Activation

- With the vehicle lighting on, press this button again to activate the black panel.
- Press once more to illuminate on the various screens again.

## Customising the instrument panel colours



In the instrument panel, you can change the colour of its dials (button **A**) independently from that of the screens (button **B**).

There are five colour variants, from white to blue.

- Press the appropriate button as many times as needed to obtain the desired colour.

# Monochrome screen A

## Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- current audio source,
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

## Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ the "MENU" button for access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ the "◀" or "▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ button **A** to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- ☞ the "OK" button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the "Back" button to abandon the operation in progress.

## Main menu

- ☞ Press the "MENU" button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
  - "RADIO",
  - "MEDIA",
  - "TRIP COMPUTER",
  - "DATE AND TIME",
  - "LANGUAGES",
  - "VEHICLE PARAM",
- ☞ Press the "OK" button to select the menu required.

## Radio / Media

With the audio system switched on, once the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, Radio text) or select the media play mode (normal, random, repeat).

For more information on the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



## Trip computer

Once the "TRIP COMPUTER" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

## Date and time

Once the "DATE AND TIME" menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- year,
  - month,
  - day,
  - hours,
  - minutes,
  - 12 or 24 hour mode.
- Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀" or "▶" buttons to change its value.
- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.
- Press the "OK" button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the "Back" button to cancel.

## Languages

Once the "LANGUAGES" menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display, from a pre-defined list.

## Vehicle parameters

Once the "VEHICLE PARAM" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- "PARK BRAKE" (Automatic electric parking brake; refer to the "Driving" section),
- "BEND LIGHTING" (Directional lighting; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "AUTO HEADLAMPS" (Automatic illumination of headlamps; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "REAR WIPE ACT" (Rear wiper coupled with reverse gear; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "GUIDE LAMPS" (Guide-me-home lighting; refer to the "Visibility" section),
- "ELECTRIC BOOT" (Selective unlocking of the boot; refer to the "Access" section),
- "CABIN SELECT" (Selective unlocking; refer to the "Access").

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

# Monochrome screen C

## Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:

- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- current audio source,
- telephone or Bluetooth system information,
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

## Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:

- ☞ button A to chooses between the display of audio information in full screen or the shared display of audio and trip computer information,
- ☞ the "MENU" button for access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ the "◀" or "▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ the "OK" button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the "Back" button to abandon the operation in progress.

## Main menu

### Personalisation-configuration



- ☞ Press the "**MENU**" button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Bluetooth connection",
  - "Personalisation-configuration",
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the "**OK**" button.



## "Multimedia" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat). For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



## "Trip computer" menu

This menu allows you to view information on the status of the vehicle.

### Warning log

This summarises the status and warning messages for systems (active, not active or faulty), displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

- ☞ Press the " **MENU**" button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the "**OK**" button to select the "**Trip computer**" menu.
- ☞ In the "**Trip computer**" menu, select the "Warning log" line and confirm.



## "Bluetooth connection" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be connected or disconnected and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).

For more information on the "Bluetooth connection" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



## "Telephone" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



## "Personalisation-configuration" menu

### Personalisation-configuration

#### Define the vehicle parameters

Choice of language 

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration".

## Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate the following equipment, classified in different categories:

- "Access to the vehicle" (see the "Access" section):
  - "Plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
  - "Unlocking boot only" (Selective unlocking of the boot).
- "Driving assistance":
  - "Parking brake automatic" (Automatic electric parking brake; see the "Driving" section),
  - "Rear wipe in reverse gear" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see the "Visibility" section),
  - "Speeds memorised" (Memorising speeds; see the "Driving" section).
- "Vehicle lighting" (see the "Visibility" section):
  - "Directional headlamps" (Main / additional directional lighting),
- "Interior lighting" (see the "Visibility" section):
  - "Follow-me-home headlamps" (Automatic operation of headlamps after switching off the ignition),
  - "Welcome lighting" (Exterior and interior welcome lighting).

For example: setting of the duration of the "follow-me-home" lighting

- Press the "◀" or "▶" buttons, to select the "Define the vehicle parameters" menu, then the "OK" button.

#### Define the vehicle parameters

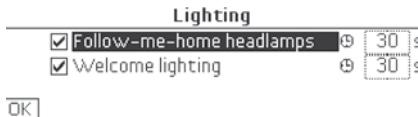
Driving assistance

Access to the vehicle

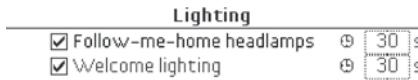
Lighting

Vehicle lighting

- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Interior lighting" line, then the "OK" button; then follow the same procedure to select the "Follow-me-home headlamps" line.



- Press the "◀" or "▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the "OK" button to confirm.



- Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the "OK" button to select the "OK" box and confirm or press the "Back" button to cancel.

## Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display from a pre-defined list.

## Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".



For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

### Adjusting the date and time

- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press "OK".
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press "OK".
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing "OK", then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the "OK" button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the "OK" button to select the "OK" box and confirm or the "Back" button to cancel.

# Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:

- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display settings menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.
- the display of alert messages,
- the display of the ambient temperature (a blue snowflake appears if there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it also allows:

- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.



**For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention, with the vehicle stationary.**

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...).

A light wipe is not enough.

The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.

This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.

Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.

Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen tablet.

### Principles

Press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.

Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.



After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

## Menus

Press one of the buttons on the control panel for direct access to a particular menu.

### Driving



Gives access to the trip computer and, depending on version, allows settings to be adjusted for certain functions.  
See the corresponding section.

### Navigation.



Depending on trim level or country of sale, navigation can be not available, an option or standard.  
See the "Audio and telematics" section.

### Radio Media.



See the "Audio and telematics" section.

### Telephone.



See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Internet.



The connected services are accessible using a connection key and by subscription.  
See the "Audio and telematics" section.

### 1. Volume / mute.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.

### Settings.



Allows configuration of the display and the system.

## "Driving" menu

The systems with settings that can be adjusted are detailed in the table below.

| Button  | Corresponding function  | Comments  |
|---|-------------------------|---|
|  | <b>Speed settings</b>   | Memorisation of speeds for use with the speed limiter or cruise control.  |
|  | <b>Vehicle settings</b> | Access to other functions with settings that can be adjusted. The functions are grouped together under three tabs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "[Driving assistance]" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "[Automatic parking brake]" (Automatic electric parking brake; see the "Driving" section),</li> <li>- "[Automatic rear wiper in reverse]" (Activation of rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; see the "Visibility" section)</li> </ul> </li> <li>- "[Lighting]" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "[Guide-me-home lighting]" (Automatic guide me home lighting; see the "Visibility" section),</li> <li>- "[Welcome lighting]" (Exterior welcome lighting; see the "[Visibility]" section),</li> <li>- "[Adaptive lighting]" (Main / additional directional lighting; see the "Visibility" section).</li> </ul> </li> <li>- "[Vehicle access]" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "[Driver flap action]" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door; see the "[Access]" section).</li> <li>- "[Unlocking boot]" (Selective unlocking of the boot; see the "Access" section).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> Select or deselect the tabs at the bottom of the screen to display the functions required. |
|  | <b>Diagnostic</b>       | List of current alerts.   |

## "Settings" menu

The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below.

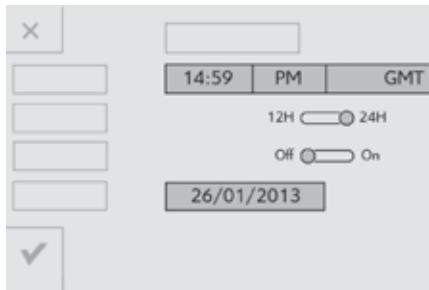
| Button | Corresponding function | Comments   |
|--------|------------------------|--|
|        | <b>Audio settings</b>  | Adjustment of volume, balance...   |
|        | <b>Turn off screen</b> | Turns off the display in the the touch screen tablet (black screen).<br>Pressing the black screen restores the display.                  |
|        | <b>System Settings</b> | Choice of units:<br>- temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit)<br>- distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).                  |
|        | <b>Time/Date</b>       | Setting the date and time.   |
|        | <b>Languages</b>       | Choice of language used: French, English, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Serb, Croat, Hungarian. |
|        | <b>Screen settings</b> | Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...).   |
|        | <b>Calculator</b>      | Display the calculator.  |
|        | <b>Calendar</b>        | Display the calendar.  |

## Setting the date and time



This function is accessible in the touch screen tablet.

- ☞ Select the "**Settings**" menu.
- ☞ In the secondary page, press on "**Time/Date**".



- ☞ Select "**Adjust time**" or "**Adjust date**".

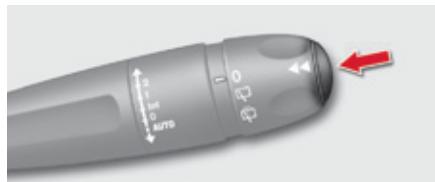


- ☞ Modify the settings using the number keypad, then confirm.
- ☞ Press "**Confirm**" to save and quit.

# Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption...).

## Monochrome screen A



### Information displays

- Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer information in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

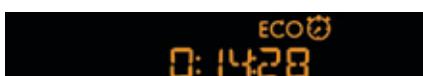
- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- Stop & Start time counter,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,



- average speed.



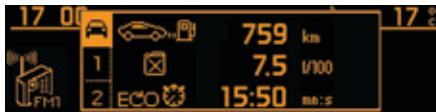
- The next press then returns you to the normal display.



### Zero reset

- Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

## Monochrome screen C



### Information displays

You can choose between two types of display by pressing button A:

- the trip computer information appears temporarily above the audio information, displayed permanently in full screen, or
- the trip computer and audio information both appear permanently in a shared screen.



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.



- the current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter,
- the trip "1" tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.



- the trip "2" tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.



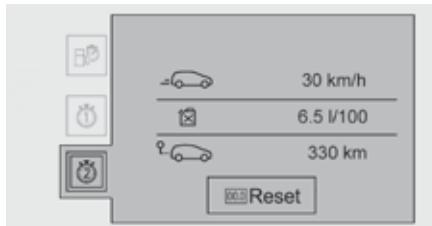
### Trip zero reset

☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures, and trip "2" for monthly figures.

## Touch screen tablet



### Display of information

Permanent display:

- ☞ Select the "Driving assistance" menu.

The trip computer information is displayed in the primary page of the menu.

- ☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a new window:

- ☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and display the different tabs.



The current instantaneous fuel consumption tab with:

- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.



The trip "1" tab with:

- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
- for the first trip.



The trip "2" tab with:

- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
- for the second trip.



### Trip reset

- ☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or press and hold the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip "1" can be used for daily figures, and trip "2" for monthly figures.

## A few definitions...

### Range



(miles or km)

This indicates the distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank in relation to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled.

**i** This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

**!** If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Current fuel consumption



(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption during the last few seconds.

**i** This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

### Average fuel consumption



(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

This is the average fuel consumption since the last trip computer zero reset.

**i** The fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher than the official figures obtained by CITROËN during the first 3 000 miles (5 000 km) of the vehicle's life.

### Average speed



(mph or km/h)

This is the average speed calculated since the last trip computer zero reset (ignition on).

### Distance travelled



(miles or km)

This indicates the distance travelled since the last trip computer zero reset.

### Stop & Start time counter



(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

# Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

## Unlocking the vehicle



### Unfolding the key

☞ Press this button to unfold the key.

### Complete unlocking using the remote control



☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle completely.

### Selective unlocking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.
  - ☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.
- The complete or selective door unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

### Opening the windows using the remote control



- ☞ Maintain the press on the open padlock until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop as soon as you release the button.

### Unlocking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle completely.



The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.  
The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on.  
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

## Selective unlocking of the boot



- ☞ Press the central button on the remote control to unlock the boot. The doors remain locked.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this button also unlocks the doors.



The complete or selective boot unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.  
Selective unlocking of the boot is activated by default.



! Don't forget to lock the boot again by pressing the closed padlock button.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking using the remote control



- ☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

### Normal locking using the key

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.



If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if present) will be completely activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds. If the alarm had previously been activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.



The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Closing the windows using the remote control



- ☞ Press and hold down the closed padlock until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop when you release the button.



When closing the windows using the remote control you must ensure that nothing prevents them from closing correctly.

If you want to leave the windows partly open, you must deactivate the volumetric alarm monitoring.



## Folding the key

☞ First press this button to fold the key.



If you do not press the button when folding the key, there is a risk of damage to the mechanism.

## Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

## Emergency control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

### Locking the driver's door

- Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.



### Locking the front and rear passenger doors

- Open the doors.
- On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see the corresponding section).
- Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- Remove the key and refit the cap.
- Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

### Unlocking the driver's door

- Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

### Unlocking the front and rear passenger doors

- Pull the interior door opening control.

## Fault with the remote control

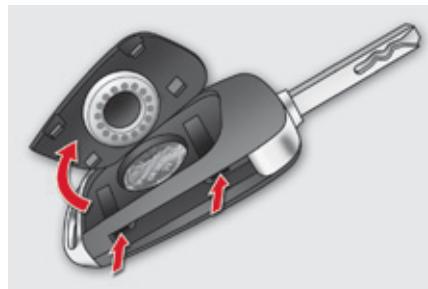
In the event of a malfunction with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

## Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the ignition key.
  - ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
  - ☞ Turn the key to position 2 (Ignition on).
  - ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.
- The remote control is fully operational again.

## Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.

### SERVICE

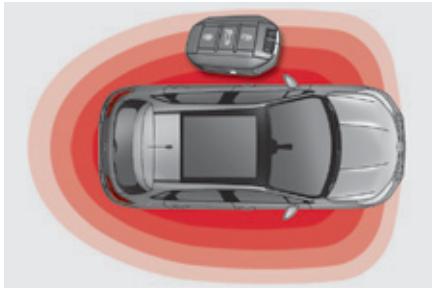
If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the two cutouts.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.

- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its location.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

! If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

# "Keyless Entry and Starting" system



System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.

**i** The electronic key can also be used as a remote control; refer to the "Key / remote control" section.

## Unlocking the vehicle



### Complete unlocking

With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

## Selective unlocking

- ☞ To unlock only the drivers door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- ☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind one of the door handle of the front passenger door with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

Activation or deactivation of the selective unlocking is done in the "**Driving assistance**" menu, then "**Vehicle settings**".

By default, complete unlocking is activated.

**i** The direction indicators flash for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.



If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if present) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock again automatically after about thirty seconds.

If the alarm had been activated previously, it will not be reactivated automatically.

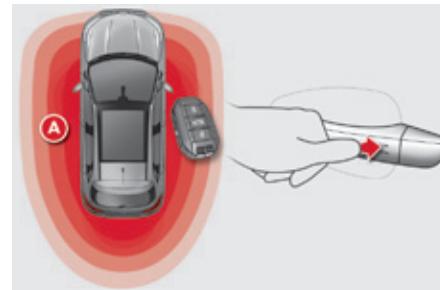
The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "Hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader (see the "Starting with the Keyless Entry and Starting system" section).

## Locking the vehicle



### Normal locking

With the electronic key in the recognition zone A, press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings). Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.



! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct operation of the windows. Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

**i** The direction indicators come on for a few seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, ...) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

## Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.

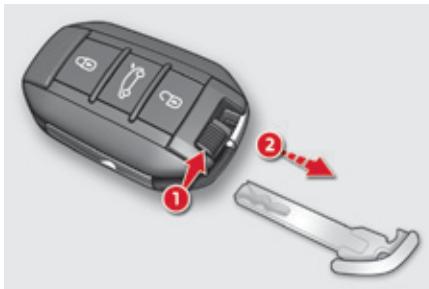


☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

# Back-up key

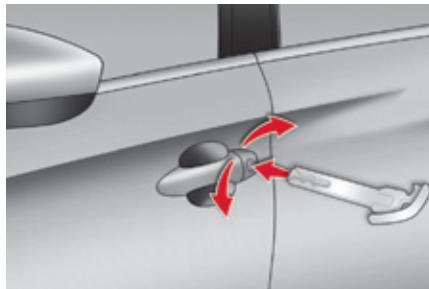
## Unlocking / Locking using the integral key with Keyless Entry and Starting



The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate:

- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, ...
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.
- ☛ Maintain a pull on button 1, to extract the integral key 2.

**i** If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.



### Locking the driver's door

- ☛ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.



### Locking the passenger doors

- ☛ Open the doors.
- ☛ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on (see the corresponding section).
- ☛ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the integral key.
- ☛ Insert the integral key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☛ Remove the integral key and refit the cap.
- ☛ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

### Unlocking the driver's door

- ☛ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.

### Unlocking the passenger doors

- ☛ Pull the interior door opening control.



## Changing the battery

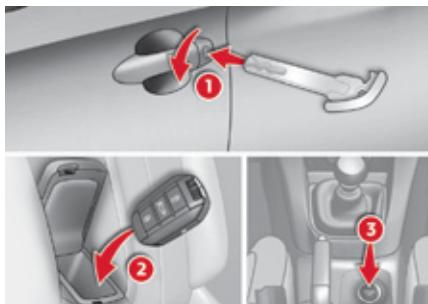
Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.

Battery replacement is signalled by the display of a message.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cutout.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its location.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

## Remote control problem / reinitialisation

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.



- ☞ Place the back-up key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- ☞ Open the front armrest.



This symbol indicates the location provided for back-up reading below the mat.



- ☞ Raise the mat by its tongue and remove it.
- ☞ Place the electronic key on the back-up reader.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "START/STOP" button.

The electronic key is fully operational again.

Remember to refit the mat below the armrest after removing the reinitialised electronic key.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## ! Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's V5 registration document and your personal identification documents. The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a replacement.

## Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

## Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

## Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

## Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

Don't forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

## When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

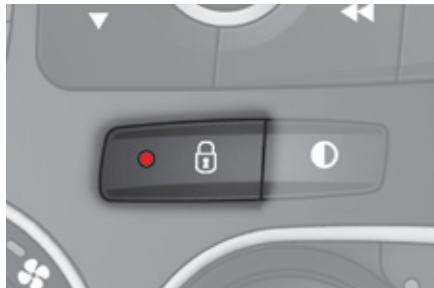
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

# Central locking control

This control allows the simultaneous locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from inside the vehicle.



## Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.  
The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

**i** If one of the doors is open, central locking from the inside does not take place.

## Unlocking

☞ Press the button again to unlock the vehicle.  
The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

**i** If the vehicle is locked from the outside, this button is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle or pull an interior door handle to open a door.

# Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

## Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.



### Carrying long and voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.

Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this locking is temporary.



## Activation / Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

- With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

# Alarm\*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

## - exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

## - tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

## - interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.



For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

3

## Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

\* According to country of sale.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



### Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle with the remote control.  
or
- ☞ Lock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

### Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.
- or
- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

**i** When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically. To reactivate the system, it is necessary to unlock the vehicle and then lock it again using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.



### Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.



To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

### Reactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.  
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
- ☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.  
The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

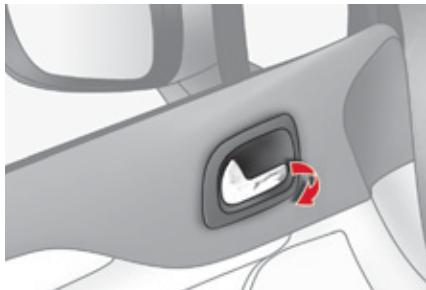
# Doors Opening



## From outside

- After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control, the key or with the Keyless Entry and Starting system, pull the door handle.

**i** When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.



## From inside

- Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

- i** With the selective unlocking activated:
- opening the the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
  - opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

# Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed higher than 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.

# Boot

## Opening using the remote control



- After unlocking the boot or the vehicle using the remote control or the key, press the opening control, then raise the tailgate.

## Closing

- Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.
- If necessary, press down on the tailgate to fully close it.

If the tailgate is not closed correctly:



- **when the engine is running**, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds,
- **when the vehicle is moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an alert message for a few seconds.

## Opening using the Keyless Entry and Starting system



### Complete unlocking

- With the electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**, press the opening control then raise the tailgate.

### Selective unlocking

By default, complete unlocking is activated. This setting is done in the "Driving assistance" menu, then "Vehicle settings" and "Vehicle access".

When unlocking of the boot only is activated:

- With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot unlocking control to unlock just the tailgate, then raise the tailgate.

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

## Closing

- Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

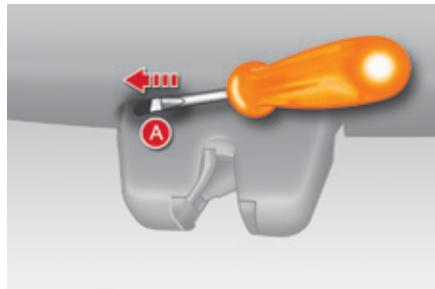
If the boot is not closed correctly, with the **engine running** or **when moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), a message appears for a few seconds.



Use this button for access to additional information.

## Tailgate release

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.



### Unlocking

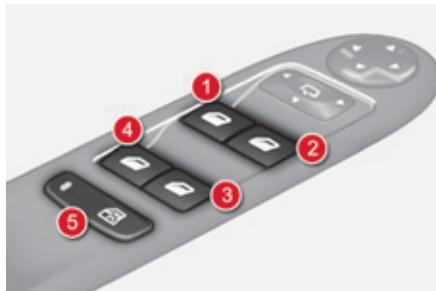
- Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole A of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- Move the latch to the left.

### Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

# Electric windows

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a deactivation system for the rear controls.



1. Driver's electric window.
2. Passenger's electric window.
3. Rear right electric window.
4. Rear left electric window.
5. Deactivation of the rear electric window controls.

## One-touch electric windows



There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.
- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.



The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.

If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door in question.



After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated which only authorises closing of the window to prevent damage to the electric window motor.

Once the window is closed, the controls will become operational again after approximately 40 minutes.

## Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.



If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), once the window has lowered:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.**

## Reinitialisation

After reconnecting the battery or a fault, you must be reinitialise the operation of the electric windows. For each of the control switches on the driver's side control panel:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

**The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.**

## Deactivation of the rear electric window controls



☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls, regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.



If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that nothing is preventing the windows closing correctly.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Take care of any passengers and/or other persons present when closing the windows using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

# Panoramic sunroof

Your vehicle is fitted with a tinted glass panoramic sunroof which increases the light and visibility in the passenger compartment. Its electric blind helps control the temperature in the passenger compartment.

## Electric blind



The blind is controlled electrically by a rotary dial.

### Opening

Turn the dial to the left (four possible settings).

### Closing

Return the dial to the initial position.



If the position of the blind does not agree with the position indicated by the dial, press the dial to open the blind to this position.

### Safety anti-pinch

If the blind encounters an obstacle during closing, it stops and partially opens again.

If the blind fails to close at a second attempt, it may be necessary to force the closing of the blind using the reinitialisation procedure.

## Reinitialising the system

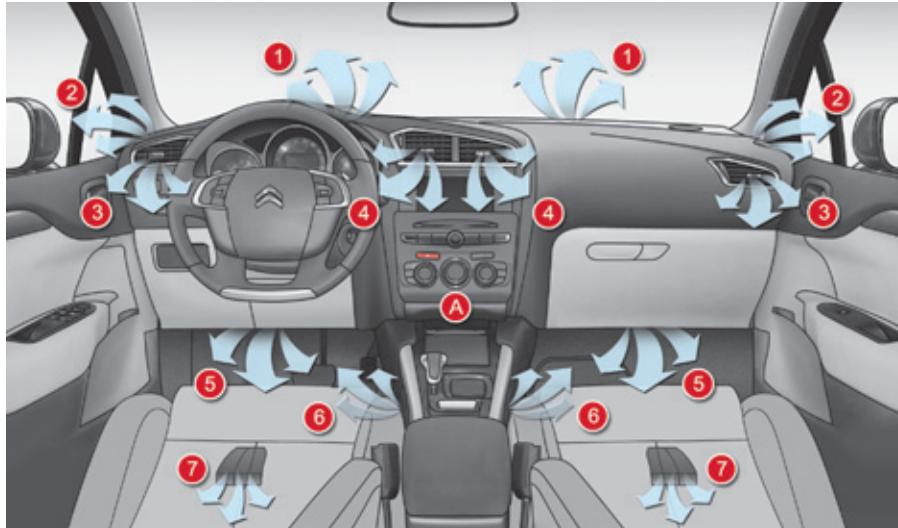
Following reconnection of the battery, or in the event of a malfunction in its operation, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ turn the dial to the fully closed position,
- ☞ then immediately press the dial, closing starts after about 10 seconds,
- ☞ maintain pressure on the dial until the blind has fully closed.

**The anti-pinch function is inoperative during these operations.**

- ! In the event of contact during operation of the blind, you must reverse its movement. To do this, turn the dial. When the driver operates the dial, they must ensure that nothing prevents the blind from closing correctly. The driver must ensure that the passengers use the blind correctly. Be aware of children during operation of the blind.

# Ventilation



## Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

## Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

## Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.

4

## Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air nozzles to the front footwells.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

# Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

**i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- ☛ To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- ☛ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- ☛ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☛ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- ☛ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- ☛ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.



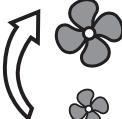
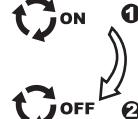
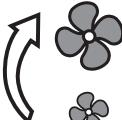
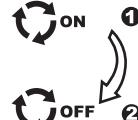
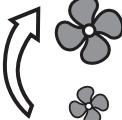
If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment. The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

**i** The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

## **i** Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system (see the corresponding section).

## Recommended interior settings

| I require...            | Heating or Manual air conditioning  |   |   |   |           |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|---|-----------|
|                         | Air distribution  | Air flow  | Recirculation of interior air / Intake of exterior air                            | Temperature   | Manual AC |
| HOT                     |  |  |  |  |           |
| COLD                    |  |  |  |  | <b>ON</b> |
| DEMISTING<br>DEFROSTING |  |  |  |  | <b>ON</b> |

**Digital air conditioning:** use the automatic mode in preference by pressing the "AUTO" button.

# Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.



## 1. Temperature adjustment



- Turn the dial to select a position between blue (cold) and red (hot) so as to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

## 2. Air flow adjustment



This dial is used to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

- Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.



- If you place the air flow control in position **0**, the system is deactivated. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.



- Avoid driving too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## 3. Air distribution adjustment

This dial is used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreens and side windows.



Windscreens, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

## 4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

**i** This function allows hot or cold air to be delivered selectively and more quickly.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.



- ☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.
- ☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

## 5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

### Switching on

- ☞ Press the "A/C" button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.



The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control 2 is in position "0".

To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

### Switching off

- ☞ Press the "A/C" button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.
- Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

# Dual-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates when the engine is running.

## Automatic operation



### 1. Automatic comfort programme



We recommend the use of one of the three AUTO modes available: they provide optimised regulation of the temperature in the passenger compartment according to the comfort value that you have chosen.

These three modes automatically adjust the air flow, according to the desired setting, while also maintaining the desired comfort value.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

- ☞ Press the "AUTO" button repeatedly:
  - a first indicator lamp comes on; the "light" setting mode is selected,
  - a second indicator lamp comes on; the "medium" setting mode is selected,
  - a third indicator lamp comes on; the "intense" mode setting is selected.

**i** When the engine is cold, the air flow will reach its optimum level progressively, taking account of the weather and the desired comfort level so as to avoid too great a distribution of cold air. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required. The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

## 2. Driver's side adjustment

## 3. Passenger's side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

- ☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.

You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

## 4. Automatic visibility programme



See "Front demisting - defrosting".



With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

## Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The the "AUTO" indicator lamps go off; the other functions will still be controlled automatically.

- ☞ Pressing the "AUTO" button returns the system to completely automatic operation.



For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

- ☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until "LO" is displayed or to the right until "HI" is displayed.

## 5. Air conditioning On / Off



- ☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

- ☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp on the "A/C" button comes on.

## 6. Air distribution adjustment



- ☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreens and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
  - the outer and centre air vents,
  - the footwells.
- You can combine the three orientations to obtain the desired air distribution.

## 7. Air flow adjustment



- ☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

## 8. Air intake / Air recirculation



- Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

- As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

! Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

## 9. "REST" function: ventilation with the engine off



Even with the engine is off, you can operate the ventilation for a few minutes.

For example, while you are away from the vehicle, the passengers can still enjoy some air circulation without having the engine running. This function is available after switching on the ignition, as well as after stopping the engine. The period that the function is available depends on the state of charge of the battery. You can activate the "REST" function while the air conditioning control screens are on.

### On switching on the engine

- The control screens come on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.
- The function can be deactivated and reactivated if the control screens are on.
- The screens go off at the end of this period.

### On stopping the engine

- While the control screens remain on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.  
Locking the vehicle has no effect on this function.
- The control screens go off at the end of this period.  
Pressing again before the end of the period interrupts off the ventilation definitively: the control screens go off and the function is no longer available.



This switch does not operate the air conditioning, only the air fan. When the "REST" function is activated, you cannot modify the temperature, air flow and distribution settings: these are controlled automatically according to the ambient temperature.  
This function is not available in the STOP mode of Stop & Start.

### Switching the system off



- ☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.

Temperature related comfort is no longer assured but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

- ☞ Modify the settings (temperature, air flow or air distribution) or press the "AUTO" button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.



Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

# Front demist - defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreens and side windows.

## With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position (indicator lamp on the control off).
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the "A/C" button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.



With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

## With digital dual-zone air conditioning

### Automatic visibility programme

- ☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreens and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreens and side windows.

- ☞ To stop the programme, press either the "visibility" button again or "AUTO", the warning lamp on the button goes off and the warning lamp on the "AUTO" button comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use before it was overridden by the visibility programme.



With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

# Rear screen demist - defrost

The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.



## Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

## Switching off

The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.



- ☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

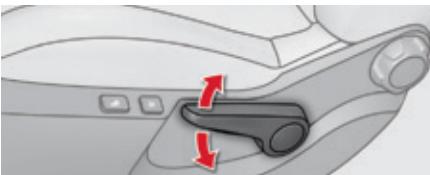
# Front seats

## Manual adjustments

- ! As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be done when stationary.



Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.



### Forwards-backwards

- Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- Release the control to lock the position.

### Seat height

- Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.

### Seat backrest angle

- Turn the control knob to adjust the seat backrest angle.

## Driver's seat electric adjustments

**i** The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off. To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.



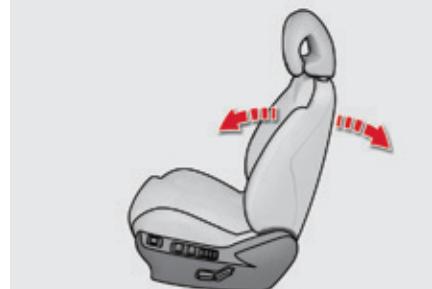
### Forwards-backwards

☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.



### Cushion height and angle

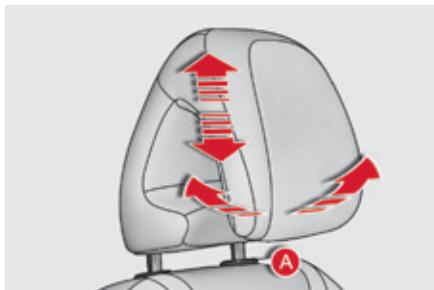
☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.  
☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.



### Seat backrest angle

☞ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

## Additional adjustments



### Head restraint height and angle

- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To lower the head restraint, press the lug A and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

! The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

**The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.**

### Removing a head restraint

- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press the lug A and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back and press the lug A at the same time.

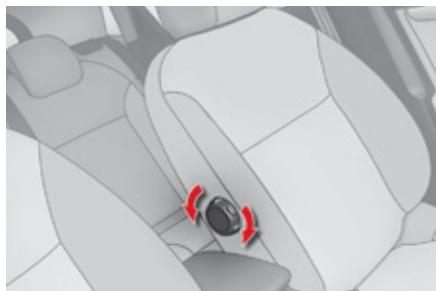
! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.



### Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- ☞ Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:
  - 0: Off.
  - 1: Low.
  - 2: Medium.
  - 3: High.



### Manual lumbar adjustment

- ☞ Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.



### Electric lumbar adjustment

- ☞ Press the front or rear of the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

## Massage function



This function provides a back massage; it only operates when the engine is running.

☞ Press the switch to activate the function. The warning lamp on the switch comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 60 minutes. During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes each cycle (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break).

After an hour, the function is automatically deactivated. The warning lamp in the switch goes off.

### Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing the switch. The movement in progress continues until the initial non-massage position is reached.

## Storing driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



### Storing a position

#### Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

**i** Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

### Recalling a stored position

#### Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.
- An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

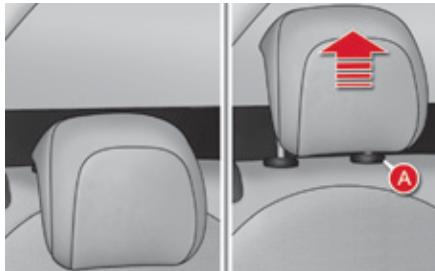
**i** You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.  
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.  
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

# Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrest (left hand 2/3, right hand 1/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

## Rear head restraints

These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).



They can also be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ release the backrest using control 1,
- ☞ tilt the backrest 2 slightly forwards,
- ☞ pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,
- ☞ then, press the lug A.

## Folding the backrest



- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- ☞ Position the seat belt between the outer and centre head restraints to avoid trapping the belt when repositioning the seat backrest.
- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.



- ☞ Pull control 1 forwards to release the seat back 2.
- ☞ Fold the seat back 2 on to the cushion.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

## Repositioning the seat backrest



- ☞ Straighten the seat back **2** and secure it.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to the control **1**, is no longer visible.
- ☞ Put the seat belt back in place on the side of the seat backrest.



When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

# Mirrors

## Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

### Demisting - Defrosting



If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen. Refer to the "Rear screen demist-defrost" section.



### Adjustment

- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.



The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.



As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

### Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.



If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.



## Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control A in the central position rearwards.



The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



If necessary the mirrors can be folded manually.

## Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

## Programming

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
  - ☞ Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.
- The adjustment is stored immediately.

## Switching on

- ☞ With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- ☞ Move control A to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

## Switching off

- ☞ Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.
  - or
  - ☞ Return control A to the central position.
- The mirror glass returns to its initial position. The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:
- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
  - if the engine is switched off.

## Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...



### Manual day/night model

#### Adjustment

- Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

### Day/night position

- Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

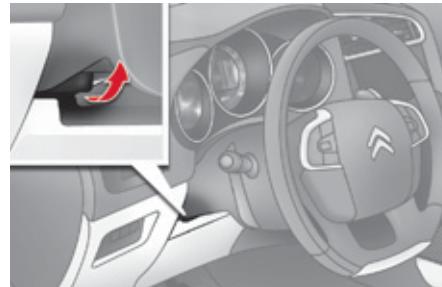


### Automatic day/night model

By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

- i** In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## Steering wheel adjustment

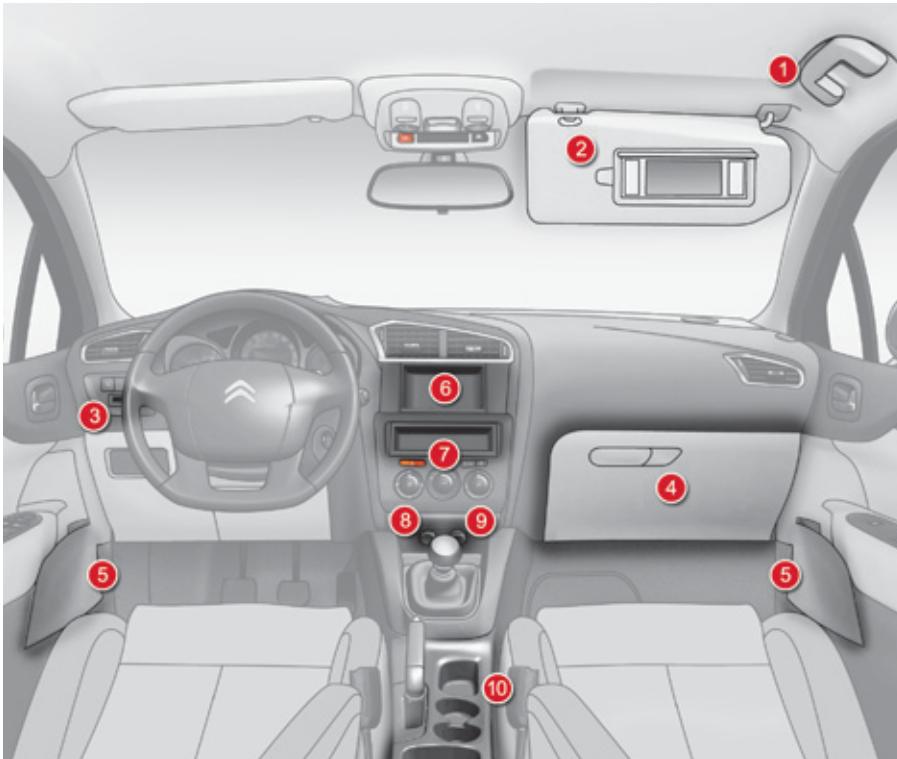


- When stationary, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

**!** As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

# Front fittings

1. **Grab handle**
2. **Sun visor**  
(see details on a following page)
3. **Ticket/map holder**
4. **Illuminated glove box**  
(see details on a following page)
5. **Door pockets**
6. **Large open storage box**  
(without audio system)  
or  
**Small storage box with flap**  
(with audio system)
7. **Small open storage box**  
(without audio system)
8. **USB port / Auxiliary socket**  
(see details on a following page)
9. **12 V accessory socket**  
(see details on following pages)
10. **Centre armrest with storage**  
(see details on a following page)



## Sun visor



Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated vanity mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

## Illuminated glove box



It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...

Its lid has locations for storing a pen, a pair of glasses, tokens, maps, a cup...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. The glove box is illuminated when the lid is opened.

It gives access to the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch **A**.

It contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle **B**, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

## 12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

## USB port / auxiliary socket



The "AUX" connection box, located in the centre console, comprises an auxiliary JACK socket and/or a USB port.

It permits the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® or USB memory stick type.

It reads certain audio file formats allowing them to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

You can manage these files using the steering mounted controls or the audio system control panel and display them on the multifunction screen.

**i** Connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically while in use.

For more information on the use of this equipment, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

## Centre consoles

### Low version



1. Storage pocket
2. Cup holder
3. Large open storage box

### Semi-raised version



1. Front armrest  
(see details on following pages)
2. Open storage
3. Cup holder
4. Storage pocket

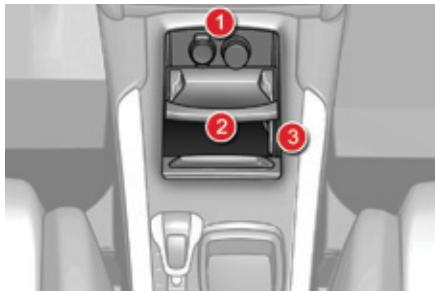
## Tall version

1. **Front armrest**  
(see details on following pages)
2. **12 V accessory socket**  
(see details on following pages)
3. **Storage box**
4. **Cup holder / Bottle holder**
5. **Storage pocket**
6. **Large multifunctional storage unit**  
(see details on following pages)



5

## Large multifunctional storage unit



This storage unit is closed by a sliding shutter.

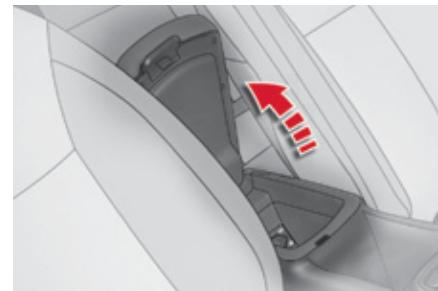
It contains:

- the USB port and 12 V / auxiliary sockets 1,
- a retractable support 2 to receive a mobile phone or portable device,
- a space ventilated by a closeable nozzle 3, to keep food and drinks fresh if the automatic digital air conditioning is operating.

**i** It is illuminated only when the sliding shutter is fully open.  
The sliding shutter can be partly closed up to the level of the retractable support, so as to keep the storage space cool.

## Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger. The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.



### Height adjustment

- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

### Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

### Storage

There is a storage space below the cover of the armrest. Depending on equipment, this can contain a 230 V / 50 Hz socket and the back-up reader for the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

- ☞ Raise the lever.
- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

## Front armrest

Comfort and storage device for the driver and front passenger.

The length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.



### Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ To move forwards, raise the lever.  
The armrest slides forwards to its stop.
- ☞ To stow it, slide it fully back and press down to lock it.

### Storage

There is a storage space below the cover of the armrest. Depending on equipment, this can contain the back-up reader for the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

## 230 V / 50 Hz power socket



A 230 V / 50 Hz socket (maximum power: 120 W) is fitted to the centre console.

To use the socket:

- ☞ lift the front armrest cover for access to its compartment,
- ☞ check that the warning lamp is on green,
- ☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer...).

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode on Stop & Start.

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.

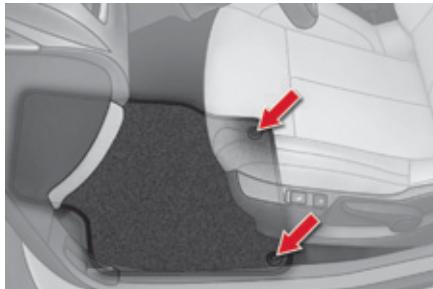
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).  
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).  
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload...), the power supply to the socket will be cut off; the green warning lamp goes off.

## Mats

Removable carpet protection.



### Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

### Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

### Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.



To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.

The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

## Storage drawers

Located under each front seat, except for the driver's seat on versions with electric seat.



### Opening

☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it open.

! Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

### Removal

Avoid removing the drawer completely, as refitting it is not easy.

- ☞ Open the drawer fully.
- ☞ Pull the drawer upwards to disengage it.

### Refitting

However, if it has been completely removed, to refit it:

- ☞ use the torch to illuminate the area under the seat,
- ☞ engage the drawer in its runners,
- ☞ lift the retaining tongues and slide the drawer under these tongues,
- ☞ at the end of its travel, press down on the drawer to engage it.

## Rear fittings

### 12 V accessory socket



- >To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

### Rear armrest

Comfort system for the rear passengers.



- Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.  
This also gives access to the ski flap.

### Ski flap

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.

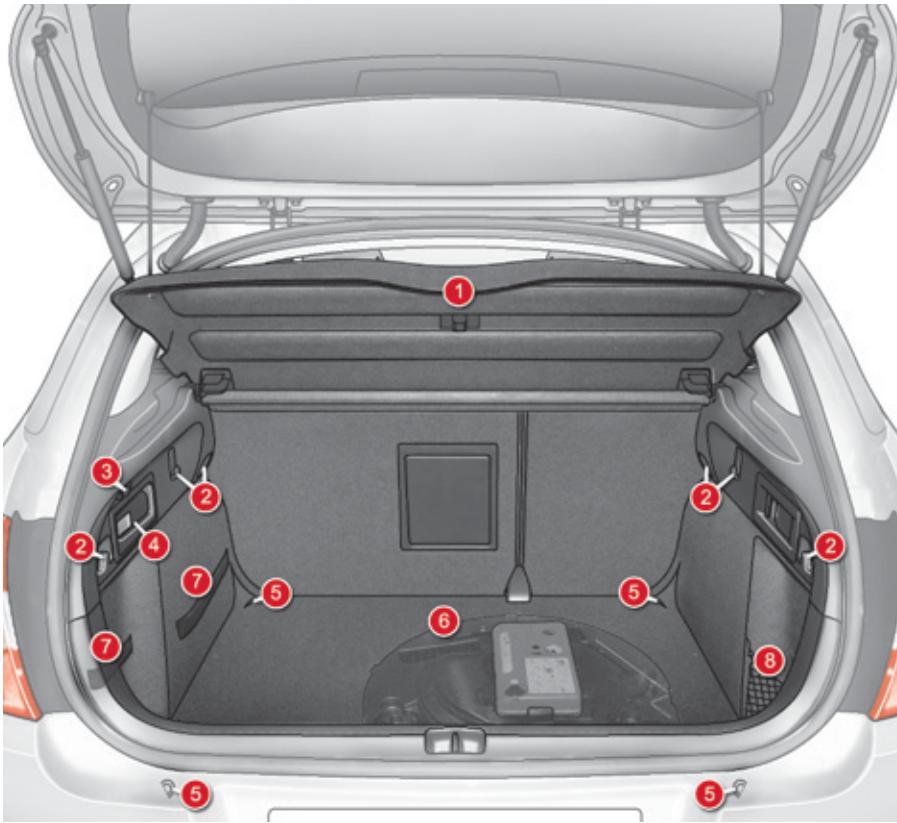


### Opening

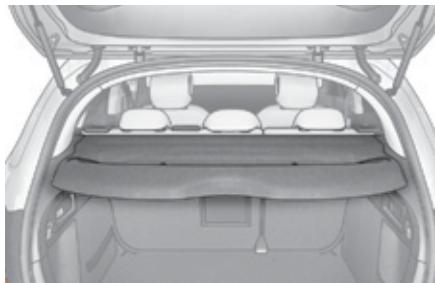
- Lower the rear armrest.
- Pull the flap handle downwards.
- Lower the flap.
- Load the objects from inside the boot.

# Boot fittings

1. **Rear parcel shelf**  
(see details on a following page)
2. **Hooks**  
(see details on a following page)
3. **12 V accessory socket**  
(see details on a following page)
4. **Torch**  
(see details on following pages)
5. **Lashing rings**
6. **Storage box**  
(see details on following pages)
7. **Retaining straps**
8. **Storage net**



## Rear parcel shelf



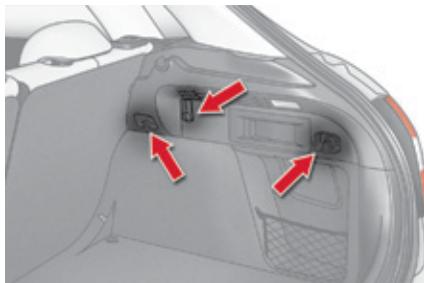
To remove the shelf:

- ☞ unhook the two cords,
- ☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

## Hooks



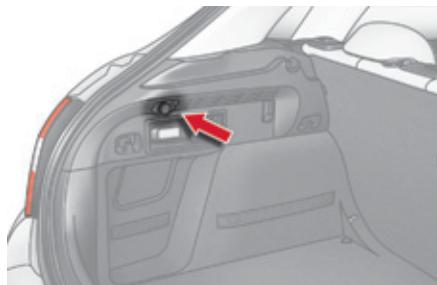
The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.



## Access to the storage box

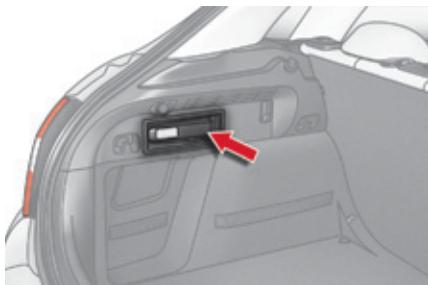
**i** An additional hook under the shelf is used to hold up the boot floor using its cord, to facilitate access to the tools and spare wheel or the temporary puncture repair kit...

## 12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- ☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

## Torch



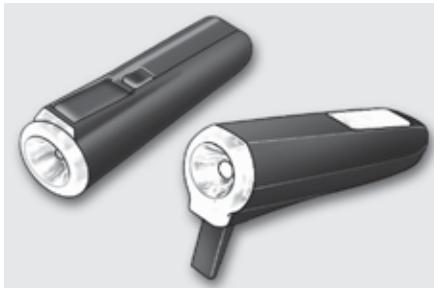
- This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.  
For the boot lamp function, refer to the "Visibility - Boot lamp" section.

## Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.  
It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.



Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.  
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal disposable batteries.



## Use

- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

## Storing

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.  
If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.



If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

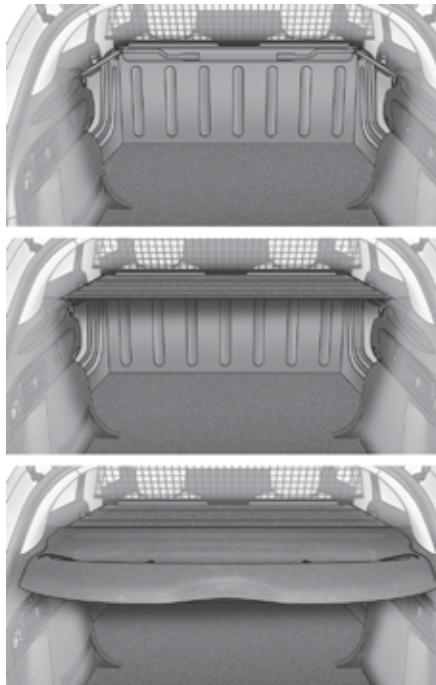
## Storage box



- ☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

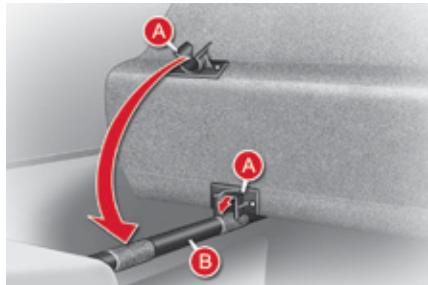
This has areas for the storage of a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, two warning triangles... It also contains the vehicle tools, the temporary puncture repair kit...

# Luggage cover (enterprise version)



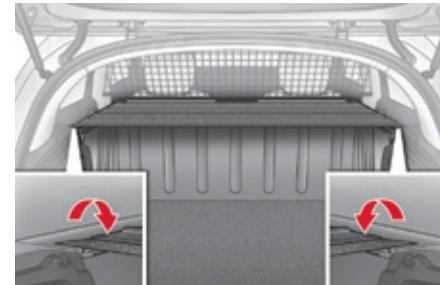
This conceals the interior of the vehicle in combination with your rear parcel shelf.

## Installation



- ☞ Insert the fixings **A** on the frame **B** while unrolling the luggage cover.

## Stowage



- ☞ Roll up the luggage cover near the rear seats.

5

## Removal

- ☞ Unhook all of the fixings.
- ☞ Lift the luggage cover on each side.



Do not place hard or heavy objects on the luggage cover. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

# Lighting controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

## Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.



In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

## Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps,
- front foglamps with cornering lighting,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting to facilitate access to the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle position markers.

## Programming

The setting of some functions can be adjusted:

- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- directional lighting.

## Daytime running lamps

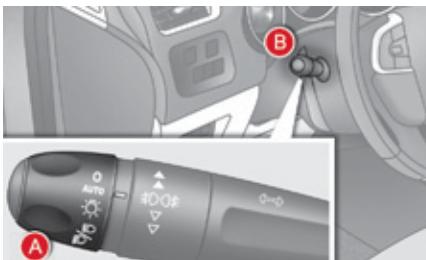
Daytime lighting which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.

This function is assured by dedicated lamps.

### Model without AUTO lighting



### Model with AUTO lighting



## Manual controls

The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

**A.** Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

**O** Lighting off / daytime running lamps.

**AUTO** Automatic illumination of headlamps.



Sidelamps.

**HP** Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

**B.** Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

## Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

## Model with rear foglamps only



## Model with front and rear foglamps



### C. Foglamp selection ring.

The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.



rear foglamps

They operate with the dipped beam headlamps and main beam headlamps.

- ☞ To switch on the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- ☞ To switch off the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards.



front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:

- ☞ forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front fog lamps.

When automatic illumination of headlamps is on (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on while the rear foglamps are on.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow. In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

## **i** **Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition**

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

## **i** **Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition**

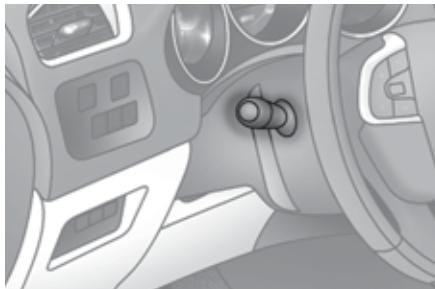
To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position "0" - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.

If the lighting is switched on manually after switching off the ignition, there is an audible signal when a front door is opened to warn the driver that they have forgotten to switch off the vehicle's lighting, with the ignition off.

They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

## Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



### Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

### Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

## Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



- Within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

## Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreens wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to an adequate level or after the windscreens wipers are switched off, these lamps are switched off automatically and the daytime running lamps come on.



### Activation

- Turn ring **A** to the "AUTO" position. The activation of the function is confirmed by the display of a message.

### Deactivation

- Turn ring **A** to a position other than "AUTO". The deactivation of the function is confirmed by the display of a message.

### Operating fault

#### SERVICE

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting come on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop workshop.



In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreens behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

## Automatic "Guide-me-home" lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps functions is activated, if the ambient light level is low the dipped beam headlamps remain on when switching off the ignition.

### Settings



Activation and deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting can be set in the vehicle configuration menu.

## Welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your access to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated depending on the ambient light level detected by the sunshine sensor.



### Switching on



☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps, as well as the side spotlamps, located under the door mirrors, come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

### Switching off

The welcome lighting switches off automatically after a programmed time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

### Programming



Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the lighting duration for the welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

## Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
- 3 people.
1. 5 people.
- Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
- Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.



The initial setting is position "0".

## Automatic adjustment of xenon headlamps



This system adjusts the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle, so as to avoid causing a nuisance to other road user.

### **SERVICE**

If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen. The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.



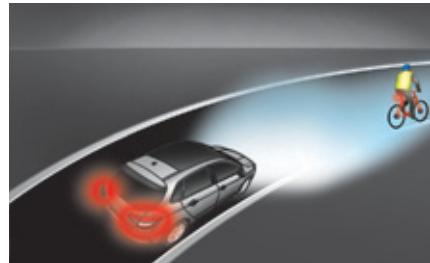
Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Directional lighting

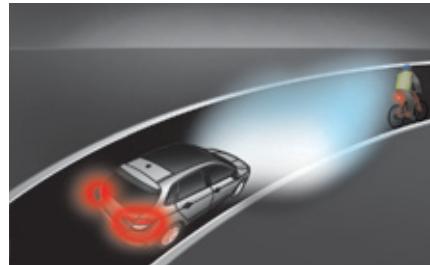


When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, allows the light beams to better follow the road.

The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps and the cornering lighting, considerably improves the quality of your lighting round bends.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

This function is inactive:

- when stationary or at low speeds,
- when reverse is engaged.

## Programming



The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.

The state of the system stays in memory on switching off the ignition.

## Operating fault



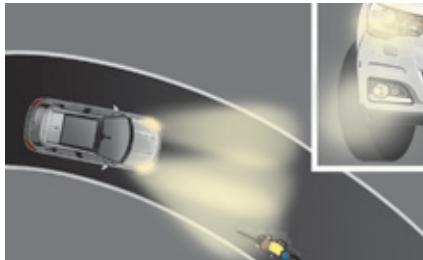
If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

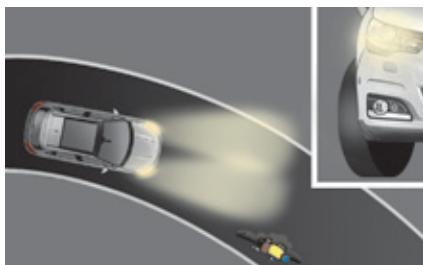
# Cornering lighting



With dipped or main beams, this function makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres...).



with cornering lighting



without cornering lighting

## Switching on

The system operates:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,  
or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

## Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

## Programming



The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.

# Wiper controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning the screens.

The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility according to the climatic conditions.

The wipers are controlled by means of stalk **A** for the front and the ring **B** for the rear.

## Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available depending on whether the following options are fitted:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreens wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

### Model without AUTO wiping



### Model with AUTO wiping



## Windscreen wiper

A. Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

**2** Fast wiping (heavy rain).

**1** Normal wiping (moderate rain).

**Int** Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

**0** Park.

**↓** Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

**AUTO ↓** Automatic wiping (press down, then release).

Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

## Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



### Switching on



Briefly push stalk A downwards.

The instruction is confirmed by a wiping cycle, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and an activation message.

### Switching off



Briefly push stalk A downwards again.

The instruction is confirmed by this warning lamp going off in the instrument panel and/or the display of a deactivation message.



The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

## Operating fault

If an automatic rain sensitive wiper malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.  
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.  
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

## Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, with the vehicle moving.**

**i** To reduce the consumption of the fluid by the headlamp washers, they operate only with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

## Low screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

On vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, the low level of this fluid is indicated by gauge in the reservoir filler neck under the bonnet. Checking and topping up this fluid can should be done with the engine off.

The level of this fluid should be checked regularly, particularly during winter. Refer to "Checks - Screenwash / headlamp wash level" section for the procedure on checking the level.

## Special position of the windscreens wipers



This position permits release of the windscreens wiper blades.

It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreens.

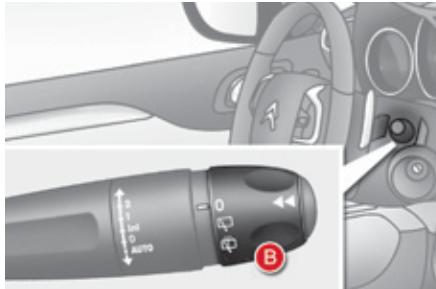
- ☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
- ☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.



To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreens,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

## Rear wiper



- B. Rear wiper selection ring: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.



Park.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe.

! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

Turn the ring to its stop/the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper operates for a set duration.

## Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

## Programming



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This function is activated by default.

# Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps
3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

## Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is used to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.



In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

## Front and rear map reading lamps



- With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.



Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

## Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

### Switching on

At night, two interior mood lamps in the front courtesy lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.



### Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

It can be switched off manually by adjusting the instrument panel lighting rheostat button to one of the lowest settings.



## Boot lamp



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

- i** The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
  - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
  - when the engine is running, no limit.

# General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings\*,
- statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,
- a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.



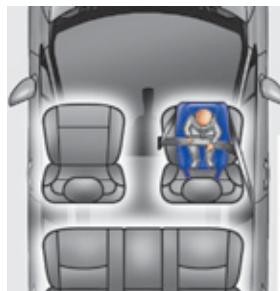
**CITROËN recommends** that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

\* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

# Child seat in the front\*

## Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened. The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.**

## Forward facing

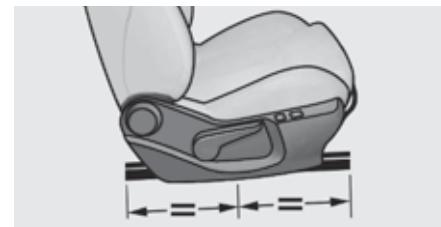


When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.



Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



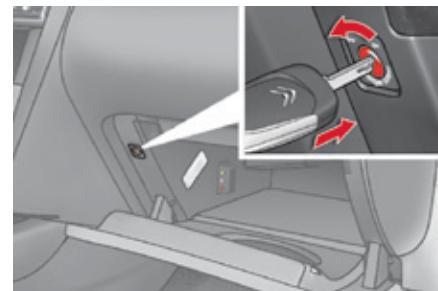
Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.

\* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

## Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.



7

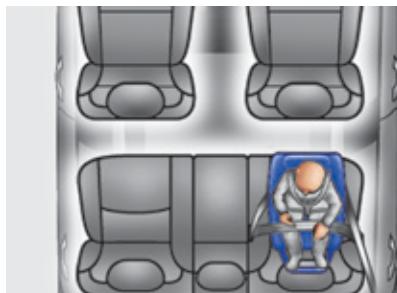
**i** For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

|    |  |
|----|--|
| AR | لا يجب أبداً تركيب نظام لإنزال الطفل للوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقدمة سيارة مجهزة بوسادة أمان هوائية أساسية مفتوحة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو باصابات خطيرة لديه.   |
| BG | НИКОГА НЕ инсталарирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.  |
| CS | NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁZNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.  |
| DA | Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt børnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.  |
| DE | Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.   |
| EL | Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ. |
| EN | NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.  |
| ES | NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.                             |
| ET | Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avaminemine võib last TÖSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.  |
| FI | ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käytöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeamisen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.  |
| FR | NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.                                    |
| HR | NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.  |
| HU | SOHA ne használjon menetíránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLAT vagy SÚLYÓS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.  |
| IT | NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.   |
| LT | NIEKADA nejrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.                                     |

|    |   |
|----|---|
| LV | NEKAD NEuzstādīet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS.<br>Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.  |
| MT | Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahu lejn l-Airbag attiva, għaliex tista' tikkawza koriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla.   |
| NL | Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RĀKEN.  |
| NO | Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretninga i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.   |
| PL | NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNA w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAZENIA CIAŁA.  |
| PT | NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.  |
| RO | Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele în directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.   |
| RU | ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенным ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем...<br>Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ. |
| SK | NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEL'NÉMU alebo VÁZNEMU PORANENIU DIETĀTA.   |
| SL | NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.  |
| SR | NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.  |
| SV | Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÄSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.   |
| TR | KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNÉ veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.   |

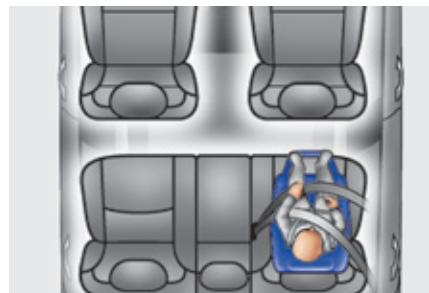
## Child seat at the rear

### Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

### Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forwards and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

### Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

- ! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.  
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

# Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

## Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the rearward facing position.

## Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L4

"KLIPPAN Optima"

From 22 kg (approximately 6 years),  
the booster is used on its own.



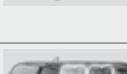
L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.  
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

# Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

| Seat                     | Weight of the child / indicative age  |   |  |   |
|--------------------------|---|---|--|---|
|                          | Less than 13 kg<br>(groups 0 (b) and 0+)<br>Up to ≈ 1 year                        | From 9 to 18 kg<br>(group 1)<br>From 1 to ≈ 3 years | From 15 to 25 kg<br>(group 2)<br>From 3 to ≈ 6 years | From 22 to 36 kg<br>(group 3)<br>From 6 to ≈ 10 years |
| Front passenger seat (c) |   |   |  |   |
| - fixed                  |  | U(R1)   | U(R1)  | U(R1)   |
| - height adjustable      |  | U(R2)   | U(R2)  | U(R2)   |
| Outer rear seats (d)     |  | U   | U  | U   |
| Centre rear seat (d)     |  | X   | X  | X   |

- (a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
- (c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.
- (d) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

- U:** seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing.
- U(R1):** identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat backrest inclined fully forwards.
- U(R2):** identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.
- X:** seating position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.

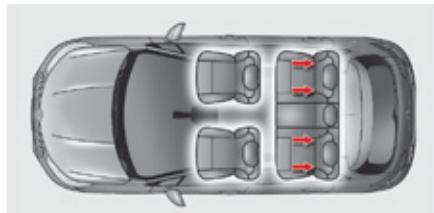


Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

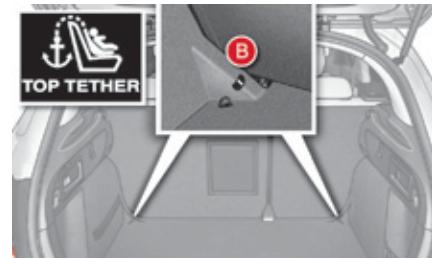
# "ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest ISOFIX regulation**.

The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- a ring **B**, behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, which is attached to ring **B**.

- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,

**i** For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- raise the carpet cover on the **TOP TETHER**,
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

**i** When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

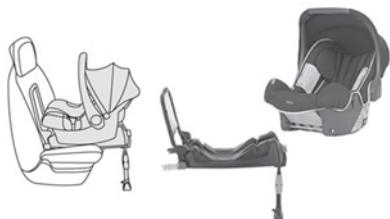
**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Follow strictly the fitting instructions provided by with the child seat.

# ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

## "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" and its ISOFIX base (size category: E)

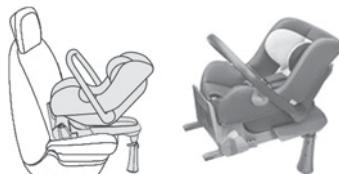
**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**.  
The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor.  
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and  
attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

## Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base (size categories: C, D, E)

**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the anchorage rings **A**.  
The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor.  
This seat can also be secured with a seat belt.  
In this case only the seat shell is used.

**i** Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

**"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"**  
(size category B1)

**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**



Installed only in the forward facing position.  
Attached to the rings **A**, as well as the ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.  
Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying.  
This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings.  
In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

**Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base**  
(size categories: D, C, A, B, B1)

**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**.  
The base includes a support leg, adjustable for height, which rests on the vehicle's floor.  
This child seat can also be used forward facing.  
This child seat **can not** be secured with a seat belt.  
We recommend that it be used rearward facing up to 3 years.

# Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

|  | Weight of the child/indicative age                  |   |                  |   |                 |       |  |                 |   |                |
|--|---|---|------------------|---|-----------------|-------|--|-----------------|---|----------------|
|  | Less than 10 kg (group 0)<br>Up to approx. 6 months |   |                  | Less than 10 kg (group 0)<br>Less than 13 kg (group 0+)<br>Up to approx. 1 year |                 |       | From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)<br>From approx. 1 to 3 years |                 |   |                |
|  | Type of ISOFIX child seat                           |   | Infant car seat* |   | rearward facing |       |  | rearward facing |   | forward facing |
| ISOFIX size category   | F   | G | C                | D   | E               | C     | D  | A               | B | B1             |
| ISOFIX child seats universal and semi-universal which can be installed on the rear outer seats | IL-SU**   |   | IL-SU            |   |                 | IL-SU |  | IUF<br>IL-SU    |   |                |

**IUF:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Universal seat, "Forward facing" secured using the upper strap.

**IL-SU:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Semi-Universal seat either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

\* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

\*\* The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured on the lower rings of a vehicle ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.



Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

# Advice on child seats

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible.

You must remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

## Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the passenger airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate.

## Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

# Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.  
The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door. It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

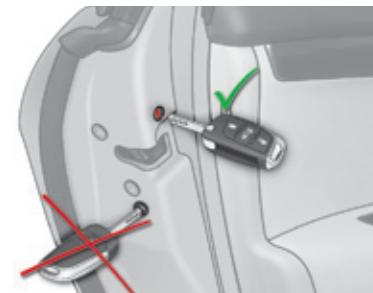


## Locking

- Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the red control as far as it will go:
  - to the left on the left-hand rear door,
  - to the right on the right-hand rear door.

## Unlocking

- Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the red control as far as it will go:
  - to the right on the left-hand rear door,
  - to the left on the right-hand rear door.



7



Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

## Direction indicators



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

**i** If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

### Three flashes of the direction indicators

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

## Hazard warning lamps



A visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

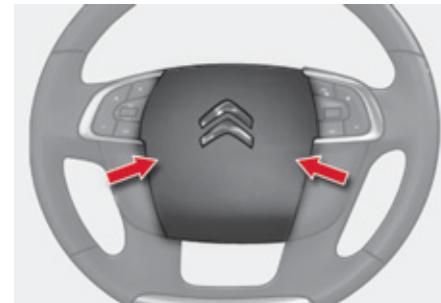
- ☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.
- They can operate with the ignition off.

### Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

- They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.
- ☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## Horn



Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.

- ☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

**i** Use the horn moderately and only in situations allowed by the motoring regulations in the country you are driving in.

# Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

## Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

### Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.

Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.



When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

### Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

### You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

### Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.

The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.



When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

# Trajectory control systems

## Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.

The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

## Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

**i** The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

### Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.

They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.



### Deactivation

In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud, ...), if you are unable to move off, it may be useful to temporarily deactivate these systems so that the wheels can spin freely and allow the vehicle to move.

☞ Press this button, located near the steering wheel.

If the indicator lamp in the button comes on, this indicates that these systems are deactivated.

It is recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

## Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

## Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

- ☞ Press this button again to reactivate them manually.

## Operating fault



The illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and in this button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a fault with these systems.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The trajectory control systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed. The correct functioning of these systems is assured provided that manufacturer's recommendations are observed on:

- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

# Seat belts

## Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system. This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

### Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

## Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

## Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Driver's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp 1 or 2 comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

## Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt, with force limiter and, for the outer seats, an effort limiter.

### Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ☞ On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.



### Seat belt unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel



This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.

### Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display

3. Right hand rear seat belt warning lamp.
4. Centre rear seat belt warning lamp.
5. Left hand rear seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps 3, 4 and 5 come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.

When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps 3, 4 and 5 come on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

**i** The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all restrained securely before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

- In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
  - be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
  - be used to restrain only one person,
  - not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
  - not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

## Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information, refer to the "Child seats" section.

## In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts (with the exception of the centre rear passenger).

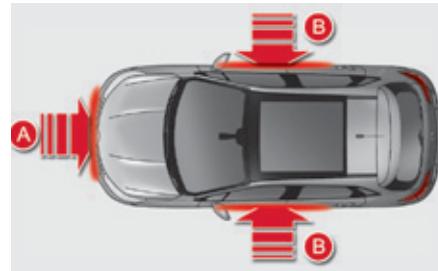
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.



**The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.**

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.



## Impact detection zones

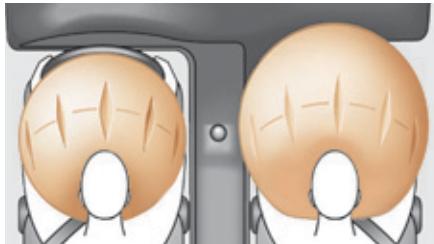
- A.** Front impact zone.
- B.** Side impact zone.



Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

## Front airbags



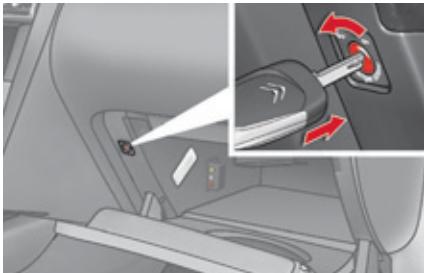
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.



### Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- turn it to the "**OFF**" position,
- then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



According to version, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.



To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rear facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

### Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the "**ON**" position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

8

### Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

## Lateral airbags



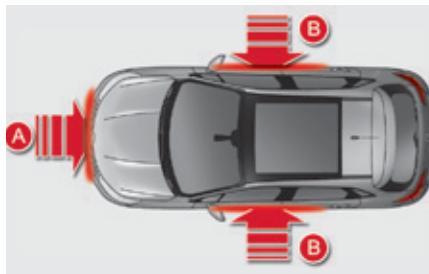
System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

### Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



### Impact detection zones

- A. Front impact zone.
- B. Side impact zone.

## Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

### Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

## ! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...). This could hamper the operation of the airbags or injure the occupants.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

### Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Refer to the "Accessories" section.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

8

### Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

## A few driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations at all times and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

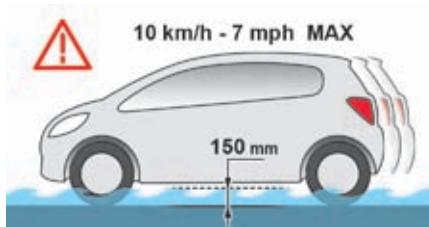
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

### Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

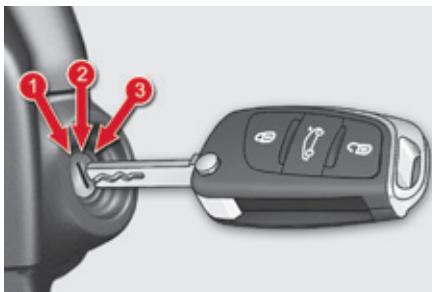
### Important!

- ! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
- Do not park or run the engine when stationary in areas where inflammable substances and materials (dry grass, dead leaves...) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system - Risk of fire!

- ! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

# Starting-switching off the engine with the key

## Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

### Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.



Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.



! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- ☞ depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),  
or
- ☞ press the brake pedal firmly (electronic or automatic gearbox),
- ☞ insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- ☞ unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

**i** In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- ☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

**i** In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**i** In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.



Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death.

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

## Switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle.
- With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position 1.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

**i** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

**i** When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

### Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position 1-Stop), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

**i** For more information, refer to the "Practical information" section, under "Energy economy mode".

### **i** Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position 2 (Ignition on), the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position 1 (Stop), then back to position 2 (Ignition on).

# Starting-switching off the engine with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system

## Starting the engine



- Place the gear selector lever at **N** for vehicles with an electronic gearbox, **P** or **N** with an automatic gearbox, or neutral with a manual gearbox.
- With the electronic key inside the vehicle (it is not necessary to put it in the reader), press the brake pedal for vehicles with an electronic or automatic gearbox, or fully declutch for vehicles with a manual gearbox.



- Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button.
- The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly (see the advice for Diesel versions).

**i** If the electronic key is not detected in the zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into the zone so that the engine can be started.

**i** If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system electronic key in the recognition zone is essential. For safety reasons, do not leave this zone with the vehicle running.

**!** For **Diesel vehicles**, in temperatures below zero the engine will not start until the preheater warning lamp has gone off.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing "START/STOP", you should hold the brake or clutch pedal down until the warning lamp goes off and do not press the START/STOP button again.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear selector lever at **N** for vehicles with an electronic gearbox, **P** or **N** with an automatic gearbox, or neutral with a manual gearbox.



- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.  
The engine stops and the steering column locks.



- If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

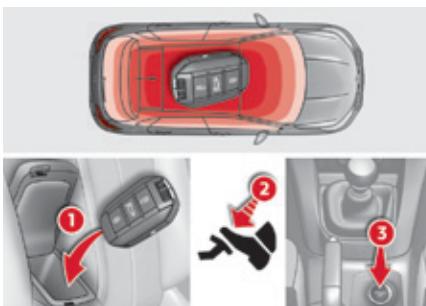


- Do not leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.



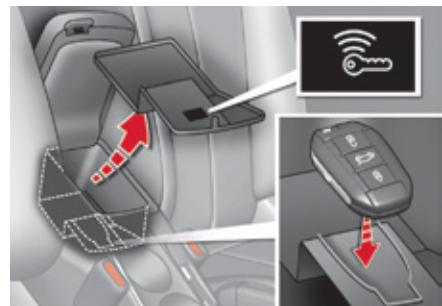
- Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Emergency starting



When the electronic key is in the recognition zone and, after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, the engine does not start:

- ☞ Place the gear selector at **N** for vehicles with an electronic gearbox, **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.



- ☞ Place the electronic key in the back-up reader.  
(see the "Access - Back-up key" section).
- ☞ Press the brake pedal on vehicles with an electronic or automatic gearbox, or fully declutch with a manual gearbox.



- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.  
The engine starts.

## Emergency switch-off



In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions. To do this, press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

## Electronic key not recognised



If the electronic key is no longer in the recognition zone when driving or when you (later) request switching off the engine, a message is displayed.



☞ Press and hold the "START/STOP" button for about 3 seconds if you want to force switching off the engine (**note that restarting will not be possible without the key**).

## Ignition on position (without starting)

With the Keyless Entry and Starting key inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.



- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- ☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and so allow the vehicle to be locked.



With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode when required to maintain the state of charge of the battery.

# Anti-theft protection

## Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised for engine starting to be authorised.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

**SERVICE** In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and/or the display of a message, depending on version.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.



Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

# Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake has two operating modes:

- **Automatic Application/Release**

Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),

- **Manual Application/Release**

The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

## Programming the mode

Depending on the country of sale of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.



Activation / deactivation is done using the vehicle configuration menu; refer to the section covering the configuration of your vehicle's systems.

The parking brake is then applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the brake is not applied.



It is recommended that you do not apply the parking brake in very cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Deactivate the automatic functions and release the parking brake manually.



Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control lever.

## Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Parking brake on".



When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied, except in the case of an automatic gearbox with the gear lever in position **P**.



Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

## Manual release



With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** control **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,
- display of the message "Parking brake off".



If you pull control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

## Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. This is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake on maximum" and a beep is heard.

### Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on may vary (e.g. on a ferry, on a lorry, during towing).

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

## Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is **automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Parking brake on".



Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing).

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.



In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

## Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Electronic gearbox:** select position **A, M** or **R** then press on the accelerator pedal.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox:** select position **D, M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,
- display of the message "Parking brake off".



When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

## Immobilising the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,
- display of the message "Parking brake on".



When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal, if the parking brake has not been applied, except in the case of an automatic gearbox with the gear lever in position **P**.



Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

## Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.

To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** the control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamps in the control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off and display of the message "Parking brake off".

## Emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever A will stop the vehicle. The electronic stability control provides stability during emergency braking. If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake faulty" will be displayed.



In the event of failure of the electronic stability control system, signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, braking stability is then not guaranteed.

In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever A.



The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

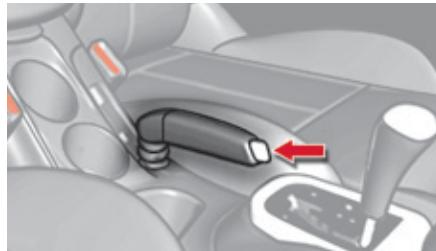
## Operating faults

If the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

| Situations   | Consequences  |
|--|---|
| <p>Display of the message "<b>Parking brake fault</b>" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The automatic functions are deactivated.</li> <li>- Hill start assist is not available.</li> <li>- The electric parking brake can only be used manually.</li> </ul>  |
| <p>Display of the message "<b>Parking brake fault</b>" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control.</li> <li>- Hill start assist is not available.</li> <li>- The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.</li> </ul> |
| <p>Display of the message "<b>Parking brake fault</b>" and of the following warning lamps:</p>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The automatic functions are deactivated.</li> <li>- Hill start assist is not available.</li> </ul>   |

| Situations   | Consequences  |
|--|---|
| <p>and possibly</p> <p></p> <p>flashing</p>   | <p>To apply the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition.</li> <li>☞ pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete.</li> <li>☞ switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps.</li> </ul> <p>The application is slower than during normal operation.</p> <p>To release the electric parking brake:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☞ switch on the ignition.</li> <li>☞ pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it.</li> </ul> <p>If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.</p> |
| <p>Display of the message "<b>Parking brake fault</b>" and of the following warning lamps:</p> <p></p> <p>and possibly</p> <p></p> <p>flashing</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available.</li> <li>- The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.</li> </ul>  |
| <p>Battery fault:</p> <p></p>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If the battery warning lamp comes on you must stop immediately as soon as the traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, place the two chocks under the wheels).</li> <li>- Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.</li> </ul>  |

# Manual parking brake



## Applying

- Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

## Releasing

- Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.



When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.



When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

# 6-speed manual gearbox

## Engaging 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear

- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear.

❗ Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> gear by mistake).

## Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

❗ Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

ℹ As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:  
- always select neutral,  
- press the clutch pedal.

# Electronic gearbox

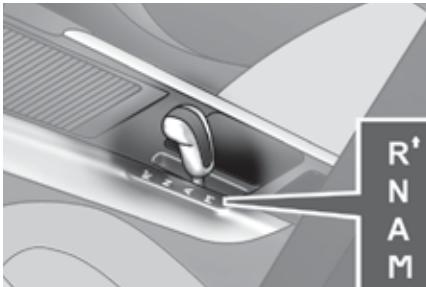
Six-speed electronic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation or the pleasure of manual gear changing.

There are two driving modes:

- **automated** mode for automatic control of the gears by the gearbox, without any action on the part of the driver
- **manual** mode for sequential gear changing by the driver using the steering mounted paddles.

In automated mode, you can temporarily take over control of gear changing.

## Gear lever



- R.** Reverse
  - ☞ With your foot on the brake, lift the lever and push forwards.
- N.** Neutral.
  - ☞ With your foot on the brake, select this position to start.
- A.** Automated mode.
  - ☞ Move the lever backwards to select this mode.
- M.** Sequential mode with manual gear changing.
  - ☞ Move the lever backwards then to the left to select this mode, then use the steering mounted control paddles to change gear.

## Steering mounted control paddles



- + Change up paddle to the right of the steering wheel.
  - ☞ Press the back of the "+" steering mounted paddle to change up a gear.
- Change down paddle to the left of the steering wheel.
  - ☞ Press the back of the "-" steering mounted paddle to change down a gear.



The steering mounted paddles cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.

## Displays in the instrument panel



### Gear lever positions

N. Neutral

R. Reverse

1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Gears in sequential mode.

**AUTO.** This comes on when the automated mode is selected. It switches off on changing to sequential mode.



Engagement of reverse gear is accompanied by an audible signal.

## Moving off

- ☞ Select position **N**.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal down fully.
- ☞ Start the engine.



**N** appears in the instrument panel screen.



If the engine does not start:

- If **N** is flashing in the instrument panel, move the gear lever to position **A**, then to position **N**.
- If the "Foot on brake" warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message, press the brake pedal firmly.



- ☞ Select automated mode (position **A**) or sequential mode (position **M**) or reverse (position **R**).
- ☞ Release the parking brake unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
- ☞ Progressively take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Accelerate away.

**AUTO** and **1, 1** or **R** appear in the instrument panel screen.



! You must press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

## Automated mode

☞ Select position **A**.



**AUTO** and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel screen.

The gearbox operates in auto-active mode, without any action on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear for:

- optimisation of fuel consumption,
- the style of driving,
- the profile of the road,
- the vehicle load.

For optimum acceleration, for example when overtaking another vehicle, press the accelerator pedal firmly past the point of resistance.

! Never select neutral **N** when driving.

### Temporary control of gear changing

You can temporarily take over control of gear changing using the "+" and "-" steering mounted paddles: if the engine speed allows, the request to change gear is acted on. This function allows you to anticipate certain situations such as overtaking a vehicle or the approach to a corner.

After a few moments without any action on the control paddles, the gearbox resumes automatic control of the gears.

## Manual mode

☞ Select position **M**.



The gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel screen.

The gear change requests are only acted on if the engine speed permits.

It is not necessary to release the accelerator during gear changes.

When braking or slowing down, the gearbox changes down automatically to allow the vehicle to accelerate in the correct gear.

On sharp acceleration, the gearbox will not change up unless the driver acts on the gear lever or the steering mounted paddles.

9



You can change mode at any time by moving the gear lever from **A** to **M** or the other way round.



! Never select neutral **N** while the vehicle is moving.

## Reverse

To engage reverse gear **R**, the vehicle must be immobilised with your foot on the brake pedal.

- ☞ Select position **R**.

At low high speed, if reverse gear is requested, the **N** indicator flashes and the gearbox goes into neutral automatically. To engage reverse, put the gear lever in position **N**, then position **R**.

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can:

- move to position **N** to engage neutral, or
- leave the gear engaged; in this case, it will not be possible to move the vehicle.

In both cases, **you must apply the parking brake** to immobilise the vehicle.

## Operating fault

With the ignition on, the flashing of **AUTO**, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a malfunction of the gearbox.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



When immobilising the vehicle, with the engine running, you must place the gear lever in neutral **N**. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, ensure that the gear lever is in neutral **N** and that the parking brake is applied. Whatever the circumstances, you must manually apply the parking brake when parking, unless the parking brake is programmed in automatic mode.

# Automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.

Four driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving,
- **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

## Gear selection gate



1. Gear lever.
2. Button "S" (sport).
3. Button "\*" (snow).

## Gear lever



- P. Park.
  - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
  - Starting the engine.
- R. Reverse.
  - Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N. Neutral.
  - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
  - Starting the engine.
- D. Automatic operation.
- M + / -**. Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.
  - ☞ Press forwards to change up through the gears.  
or
  - ☞ Press rearwards to change down through the gears.

## Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the lever in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator is displayed in the instrument panel.

- P. Park
- R. Reverse
- N. Neutral
- D. Drive (Automatic driving)
- S. Sport programme
- \*. Snow programme
- 1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation
- Invalid value during manual operation

## Moving off

- ☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Start the engine.  
If this procedure is not followed, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message in the multifunction screen.
- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
- ☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.  
The vehicle moves off immediately.

**i** If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

**!** When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed. When the engine is running, never leave children in the vehicle without supervision.  
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

**i** A message is displayed if you try to move the gear lever from position **P** to another position without pressing the brake pedal.

## Automatic operation

- ☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.  
The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.  
For maximum acceleration without touching the lever, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide efficient engine braking.  
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

**!** Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.  
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

## Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

### Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button "S", after starting the engine. The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

### Snow programme "※"

☞ Press button "※", after starting the engine. The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads. This programme improves the vehicle's ability to move off and traction when grip is poor.



※ appears in the instrument panel.

## Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

## Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push the lever towards the + sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the lever towards the - sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



**D** disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.

It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

### Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

**i** If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

- ☞ Return the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

## Operating fault

### SERVICE

When the ignition is on, the lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, indicates a gearbox malfunction.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

This warning lamp may also come on if a door is opened.



You risk damaging the gearbox:

- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the lever from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.



To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear lever at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

# Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- when certain conditions of gradient are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

!

Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase. If you need to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on (not flashing) in the instrument panel.

## Operation



**On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:**

- if you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- if you are in position **A** or **M** with an electronic gearbox,
- if you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.

**On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.**

## Operating fault



**SERVICE**

If a fault occurs with the system, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

# Gear shift indicator\*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system. This function cannot be deactivated.

With an electronic or automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.



The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear,

Example:

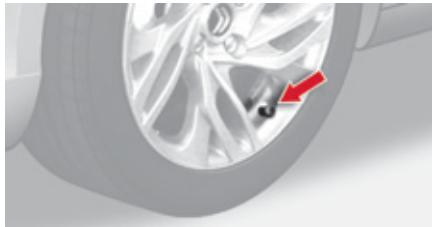
- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



On BlueHDI Diesel versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions. In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

\* Depending on engine.

# Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving. The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.

A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel). The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey. Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).



The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label (see the "Identification markings" section). The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

## Under-inflation alert



The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.



In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

- ☞ If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold. If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).



The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.

The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.



The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre. Do not rely on just a visual check.

## Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.



This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

## Operation

### Going into engine STOP mode

**ECO** The "ECO" warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi Diesel versions, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**, at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or put the gear lever into position **N**.



If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the "START/STOP" button.



With an electronic gearbox, for your comfort during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, for example.



Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

### Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (up or down),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (using the key or the "START/STOP" button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

**ECO** In this case, the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Going into engine START mode

**ECO** The "ECO" warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**:
  - gear lever in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, when you move the gear lever to position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

**i** With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

## Special cases: START invoked automatically

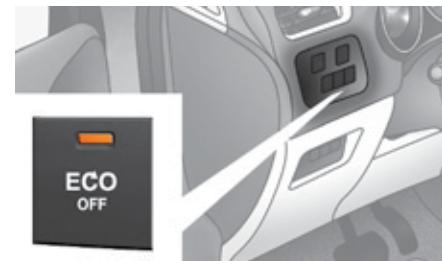
For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (3 km/h (2 mph) with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDI Diesel versions) or 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

**ECO** In this case the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Deactivation



At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by the display of a message.

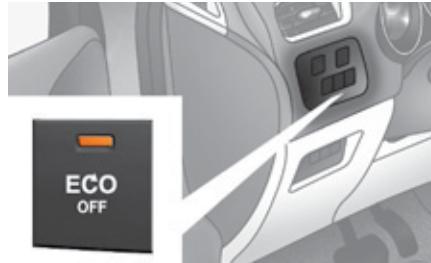
**i** If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

## Reactivation

Press the "ECO OFF" switch again. The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and the display of a message.

**i** The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

## Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the "ECO OFF" switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

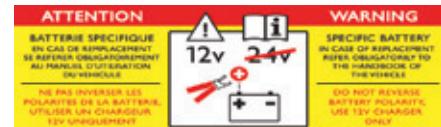
**i** In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear lever into position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

## Maintenance

**!** Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a specific battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop).

Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.



**!** The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. All work on this type of battery must be done only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Lane departure warning system



System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).

Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)). This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

! The lane departure warning system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.  
It is necessary to observe driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

## Activation

☞ Press this button, the indicator lamp comes on.

## Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:

- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

## Operating fault

### SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

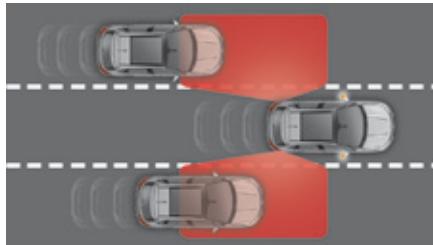
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The detection may be impeded:

- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

# Blind spot sensors



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.

The blind spot sensor system can never replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

## Operation

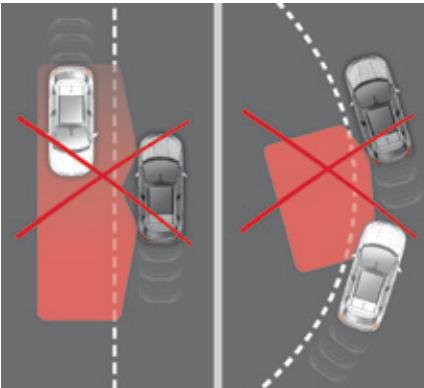


- ☞ On switching on the ignition, or engine running, press this button to activate the function; the warning lamp comes on.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

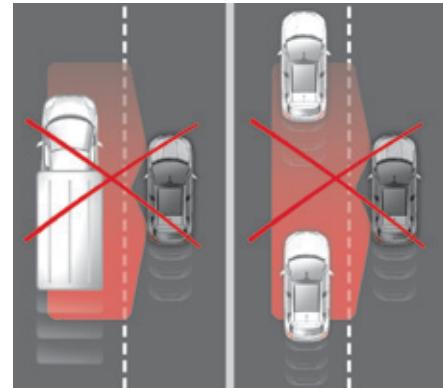
The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, cycle - is detected and the following conditions are fulfilled:

- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 75 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- when you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan...



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of immobile objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs...),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a sinuous road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach...) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.



## Operating fault



- ☞ To deactivate the system, press this button again; the warning lamp goes off.

The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

**i** The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

In the event of a fault, the warning lamp in the button flashes then goes off.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail...).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

# Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be registered which will then be offered as settings for two systems: the speed limiter (a maximum speed) and the cruise control (cruising speed).

You can memorise up to six speed settings in the system. By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

## Access



- Press the "**MEM**" button to display the list of speed settings memorised.

## Selection

To select a memorised speed setting:

- press and hold the "+" or "-" button; the system stops at the nearest memorised speed setting,
- press and hold again the "+" or "-" button to select another memorised speed setting.

A reminder of the speed and the state of the system (on / off) is displayed in the instrument panel.

## With your Audio system



- Go to the main menu by pressing the " **MENU**" button;
- Select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu and confirm.
- Select "Vehicle parameters" menu and confirm.
- Select the "Driving assistance" line and conform.
- Select "Speeds memorised" line and confirm.
- Modify the speed.
- Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.

9



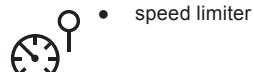
For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out these operations when stationary.

## With the touch screen tablet

- ☞ Select the "Driving assistance" menu.
- ☞ In the secondary page, press "Speed settings".



- ☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise speed settings:



- speed limiter

or



- cruise control.

- ☞ Choose the speed setting you want to modify.



- ☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.
- ☞ Confirm to save the modification and quit the menu.

! For safety reasons, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary.



This button restores the factory settings.

# Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver. When the programmed speed limit is reached, pressing the accelerator pedal no longer has any effect.

## Operation

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually: it requires a programmed speed of at least 20 mph (30 km/h).

The speed limiter is **switched off** by manual operation of the control.

The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly beyond the point of resistance.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

The programmed speed remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Steering mounted controls



The functions of this system are grouped together on the steering mounted controls.

1. Speed limiter mode selection wheel.
2. Programmed value decrease button.
3. Programmed value increase button.
4. Speed limiter on / off button.
5. List of memorised speeds display button.

## Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

6. Speed limiter on / off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selection of a memorised speed.



The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



## Programming

- Turn dial 1 to the "LIMIT" position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause). You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

- Set the speed value by pressing button 2 or 3 (e.g.: 55 mph (90 km/h)).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons 2 and 3:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

If speed memorisation is available and activated on your vehicle, the programmed speed will stop at the closest memorised speed; refer to the corresponding section.

- Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button 4.
- Switch the speed limiter off by pressing button 4: the display confirms that it has been switched off (Pause).
- Switch the speed limiter back on by pressing button 4 again.

## Exceeding the programmed speed

Pressing the accelerator pedal to exceed the programmed speed will not have any effect unless you press the pedal **firmly** past the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the programmed speed, which is still displayed, flashes.

Returning to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the programmed speed.



## Exiting the speed limiter mode

- Turn dial 1 to the "0" position: the speed limiter mode is deselected. It disappears from the screen.

## Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the speed limiter, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

# Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

## Operation

The cruise control is **switched on** manually: it requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) and engagement of:

- fourth gear on the manual gearbox,
- second gear on the electronic gearbox system or automatic gearbox, in sequential driving mode,
- position **A** on the electronic gearbox system or **D** on an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **switched off** manually or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal or on triggering of the trajectory control systems, for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal. To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed value.

## Steering mounted controls



The functions of this system are grouped together on the steering mounted controls.

1. Cruise control mode selection dial.
2. Speed programming / value decrease button.
3. Speed programming / value increase button.
4. Cruise control off / resume button.
5. Memorised speeds display button.



The cruise control system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. You are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

## Displays in the instrument panel



The programmed information is grouped together in the instrument panel screen.

6. Cruise control off / resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selecting a stored speed.



## Programming

- ☞ Turn dial 1 to the "CRUISE" position: the cruise control mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).
- ☞ Set the programmed speed by accelerating to the required speed, then press button 2 or 3 (e.g.: 70 mph (110 km/h)); the cruise control system is activated (ON).

You can then change the programmed speed using buttons 2 and 3:

- by + or - 1 mph (km/h) = short press,
- in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h) = maintained press.

If storing speeds is available and activated on your vehicle, the programmed speed will stop at the closest stored speed; refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Stop the cruise control system by pressing button 4: this is confirmed in the screen (Pause).
- ☞ Switch on the cruise control again with another press on button 4.

## Exceeding the programmed speed

Intentional or unintentional exceeding of the programmed speed results in flashing of this speed in the screen.

Return to the programmed speed, by means of intentional or unintentional deceleration of the vehicle, automatically cancels the flashing of the speed.

## Exiting cruise control mode

- ☞ Turn dial 1 to the "0" position: the cruise control mode is deselected. It disappears from the screen.



## Operating fault

In the event of a cruise control malfunction, the speed is cleared resulting in flashing of the dashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- ❗ When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed changing buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

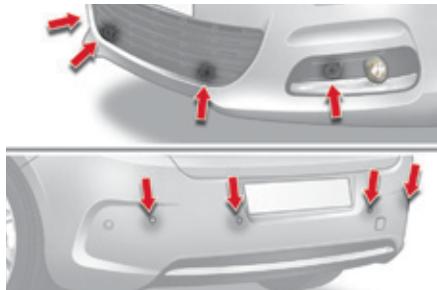
Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

On a steep descent, the cruise control will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. On steep climbs or when towing, the programmed speed may not be reached or maintained.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

# Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.

Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre due to the presence of blind spots.

! This function cannot, in any circumstances, take the place of the vigilance of the driver.

## Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is accompanied by an audible signal. The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

## Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.



## Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the multifunction screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is near, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

## Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.



### Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

**i** The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

## Operating fault

### SERVICE

In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep). Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

# TOTAL & CITROËN

## Partners in performance and protecting the environment

### Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 years, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed for CITROËN lubricants to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.

For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain of the best performance for your engine.

### Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performances of your engine, while also protecting the environment.



CITROËN prefers TOTAL



10

# Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

## Low fuel level



When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and the display of an alert message. When it first comes on, **around 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel has been added, every time the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp appears, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and the display of this alert message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the level drops towards **0**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer to the corresponding section.



With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

## Refuelling

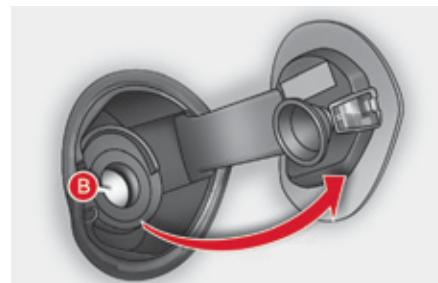
Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.



☞ Press control **A** until the automatic opening of the fuel flap is heard.

This control remains active for a few minutes after switching off the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.

☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel for your vehicle.



- ☞ Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap **B**.
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Maintain this position while refuelling.
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

**If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the third cut-off; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.**

The petrol or Diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**For petrol engines, the use of unleaded fuel is compulsory.**

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

**!** **If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.**

## Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

## Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with E10 bio-petrol (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.



## Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

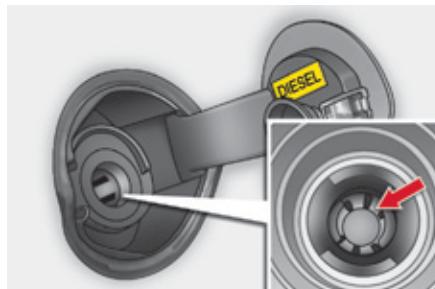


## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)\*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

### Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.  
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

### **i Travelling abroad**

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you want to travel.

\* According to country of sale.

# Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the "Misfuel prevention (Diesel)" section.

**i** If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

## BlueHDI 100, 115 and 120 engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.



## 1.6 HDi engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.



## 2.0 HDi engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Slacken the bleed screw.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- ☞ Tighten the bleed screw.
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter.
- ☞ Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place, ensuring that it has clipped correctly.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

# Bonnet

## Opening

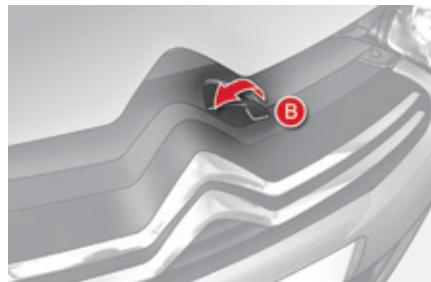
! Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

**The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

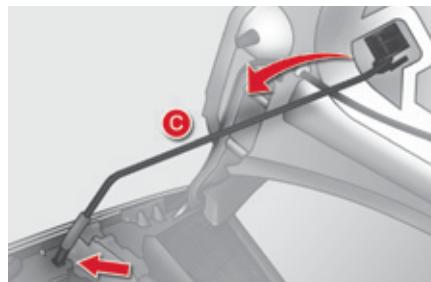


- Open the front left door.
- Pull the interior bonnet release lever A, located at the bottom of the door aperture.

**i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.



- Push the exterior safety catch B to the left and raise the bonnet.



- Unclip the stay C from its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

! Do not open the bonnet in high winds. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

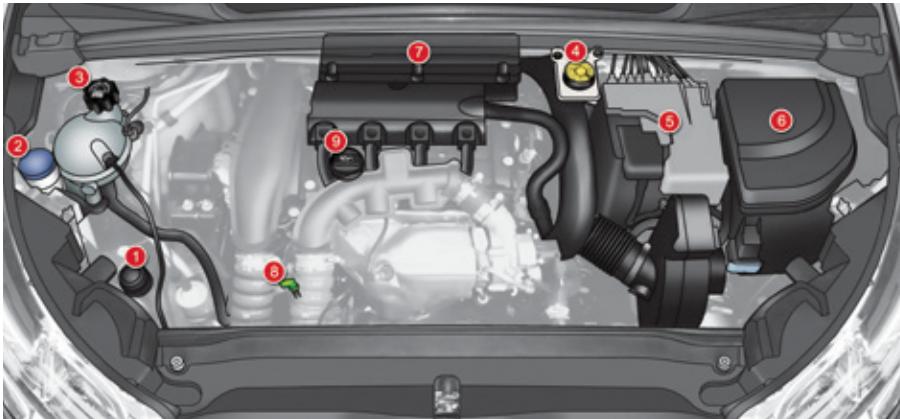
## Closing

- Take the stay out of the support notch.
- Clip the stay in its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

# Petrol engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids and for replacing certain components.

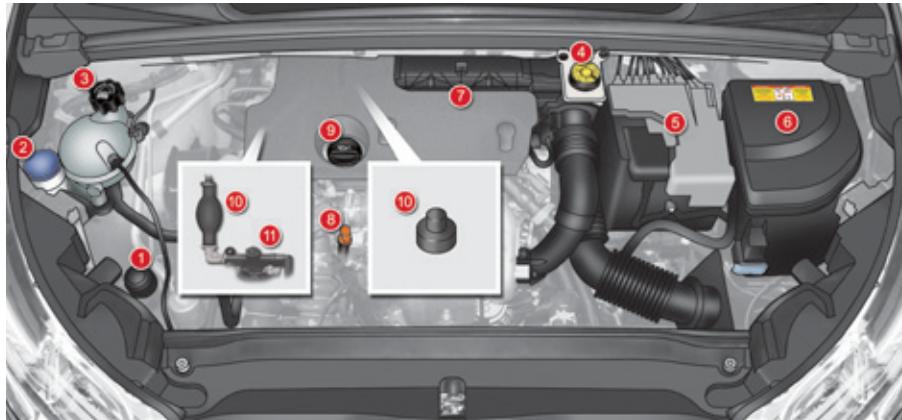
1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



## Diesel engines

The various caps and covers allow access for checking the levels of the various fluids, for replacing certain components and for priming the fuel system.

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant reservoir.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery/Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump\*.
11. Bleed screw\*.



\* According to engine.

# Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

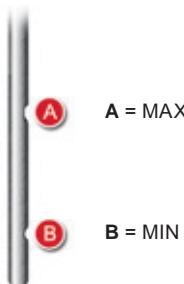
**i** To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

### Checking using the dipstick

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☛ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.
- ☛ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☛ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

## Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Topping up the engine oil level

Refer to the "Petrol engine" or "Diesel engine" section for the location of the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

## Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation. In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

## Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

## Coolant level



The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

## Fluid specification

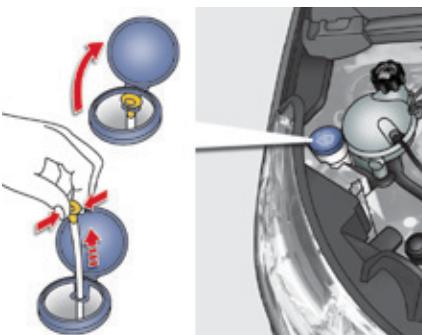
The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

! **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

## Screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level



To check the level or top up the fluid on vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, immobilise the vehicle and switch off the engine.



- ☞ Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.
- ☞ Open the screenwash reservoir filler cap.
- ☞ Take and pinch the level gauge to block its breather.
- ☞ Remove the gauge completely from the reservoir to read the level in the transparent section.

- ☞ Top up if necessary.
- ☞ Refit the filler cap to the reservoir and close the bonnet.

## Specification of the fluid

To ensure optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, the fluid should never be topped up or replaced by plain water.

In wintry conditions, the use of a fluid with an ethyl alcohol or methanol base is recommended.

## Additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

## Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Used products



Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.  
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.  
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

# Checks

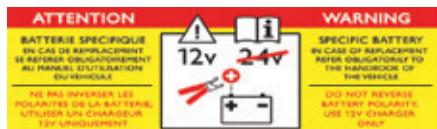
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

## Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

## Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed. Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

## Particle filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that there is a risk of blockage of the particle filter.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, refer to the "Additive level" section.



On a new vehicle, the first operations of regeneration of the particle filter may be accompanied by the smell of "burning", which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

## Electronic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the checking interval for this component.

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change). Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Manual parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information, refer to the "Electric parking brake - Operating faults" section.



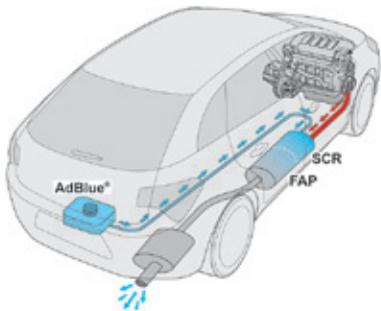
Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

# AdBlue® additive and SCR system for BlueHDI Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

## Presentation of the SCR system

Using an additive called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® additive is held in a special tank located under the boot at the rear of the vehicle. It has a capacity of 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® additive tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the necessary top-up carried out.



Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

## Range indicators

When switching on the ignition, an indicator gives an estimate of the distance that can be travelled with your vehicle before engine starting is automatically prevented, once the vehicle starts using the reserve of AdBlue® or after a fault is detected with the SCR system. In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range is the one displayed.

### Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)

When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.

### In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®



The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)

UREA



When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (For example "NO START IN 900 miles" means that "Starting will be prevented in 900 miles).

When driving, this display appears every 150 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up. You can also top-up the tank yourself. Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (For example "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles).

When driving, this display appears every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up. You can also top-up the tank yourself. Refer to the "Topping-up" section. Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and 0 km or miles - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented"). The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.



To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank. Refer to the "Topping-up" section.

## In the event of a fault with the the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### In the event of the detection of a fault



The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered when driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

**i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after a self diagnosis test of the SCR emissions control system.

### During an authorised driving phase (between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (e.g.: "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles").

While driving, this display appears every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

**Starting prevented**

Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").



You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**Freezing of the AdBlue® additive**

The AdBlue® additive freezes at temperatures below around -11°C. The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

## Topping-up the AdBlue® additive

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the additive between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.

You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

### Precautions in use

The AdBlue® additive is an urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area). In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention. If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the product. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

Use only AdBlue® additive that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

- ! Never dilute the additive with water.
- ! Never pour the additive into the Diesel fuel tank.



# AdBlue®

The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies topping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

- ! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

## Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the additive can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

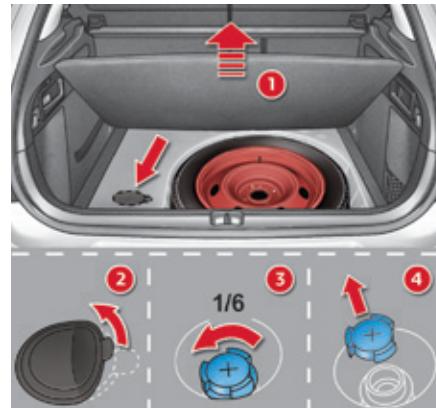
## Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C.

Otherwise, by freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☛ Switch off the ignition and remove the key, or if your vehicle has one, press the START/STOP button to switch off the engine.



- ☛ Raise the boot floor for access to the AdBlue® tank. Secure the boot floor by attaching its cord to the hook on the parcel shelf support.
- ☛ Unclip the black plastic blanking plug using its tab.
- ☛ Insert your fingers into the aperture and turn the blue cap a 6<sup>th</sup> of a turn anti-clockwise.
- ☛ Carefully lift off the cap, without dropping it.



- ☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! Important: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert displays and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

- ☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.  
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6<sup>th</sup> of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Refit the black plastic blanking plug, clipping it in on the flap
- ☞ Detach the cord from the parcel shelf support and lower the boot floor.

! Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of additive, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system into the passenger compartment. Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

! Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided for this purpose or take them to your dealer.

# Temporary puncture repair kit

Complete system consisting of a compressor and a sealant cartridge which permits

**temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

## Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

## Description of the kit



- A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
- B. On "I" / off "O" switch.
- C. Deflation button.
- D. Pressure gauge (in bar and p.s.i.).
- E. Compartment housing:
  - a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
  - various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...



The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.



- F. Sealant cartridge.
- G. White pipe with cap for repair.
- H. Black pipe for inflation.
- I. Speed limit sticker.



The speed limit sticker I must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Repair procedure



### 1. Sealing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position "O".



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

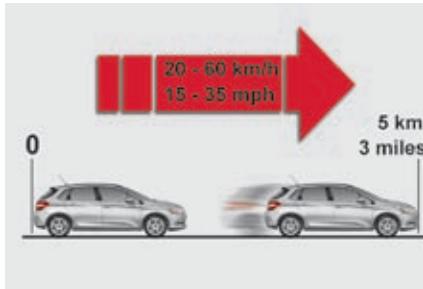


- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

**i** Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

! Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children.

**i** Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.



- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).
  - ☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
  - ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
  - ☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.
- i** If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

### **i** Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## 2. Inflation

- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.



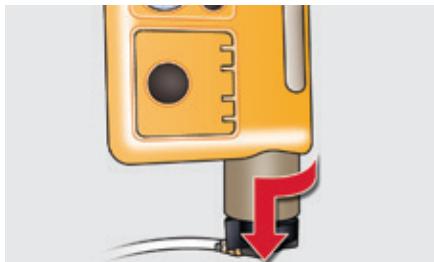
As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "I"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "O" and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).

A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Remove and stow the kit.
- ☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

## Removing the cartridge



- ☞ Stow the black pipe.
- ☞ Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- ☞ Support the compressor vertically.
- ☞ Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.



Beware of discharges of fluid.  
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.

The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.

After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.

Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

## Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:

- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- ☞ Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- ☞ Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.
- ☞ If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.



- ☞ Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- ☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "**I**"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "**O**" and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

# Changing a wheel

Procedure for changing a faulty wheel for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

## Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear shelf support,
- ☞ with a standard size spare wheel, unclip and remove the box in the middle of the wheel containing the tools,
- or
- ☞ with a "space-saver" spare wheel; lift the wheel at the rear towards you for access to the storage box containing the tools.



## List of tools

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle. Do not use them for other purposes.

1. Wheelbrace.  
For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.  
For raising the vehicle.
3. Bolt cover removal tool.  
For removing the bolt head protectors on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).  
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
5. Chock (with ETG6 electronic gearbox version).

### Wheel with trim

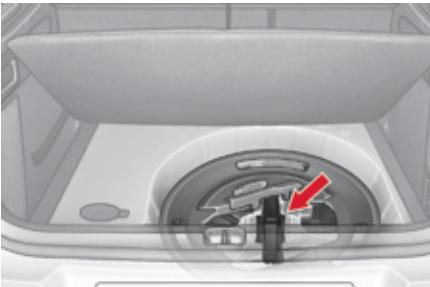
**When removing the wheel**, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace 1 pulling at the valve passage hole.

**When refitting the wheel**, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.



### For BlueHDI Diesel versions

If your vehicle has an **electric parking brake**, the jack is stowed in a bag placed in the bottom of the boot.



If your vehicle has a **manual parking brake**, the jack is stowed under the spare wheel and under the storage box:

- ☞ remove the spare wheel,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
- ☞ push the jack forward, then lift it by its rear part.

### Access to the spare wheel



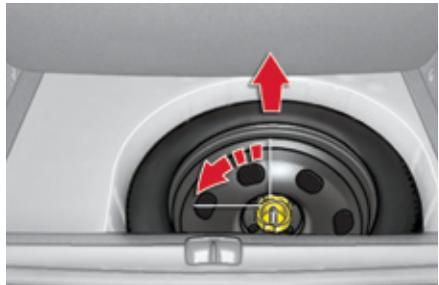
The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.

Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel, or for some countries it is the "space saver" type.

For access to the spare wheel, refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools" on the previous page.



If your vehicle has an electric parking brake, only a "space saver" type of wheel can be stowed in the boot.



### Taking out the standard wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.



### Putting the standard wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.



- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.
- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.

### **i** Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or an qualified workshop.

## Removing a wheel



### **i** Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.

Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear\* to lock the wheels.

Check that the braking warning lamps in the instrument panel are on (not flashing).

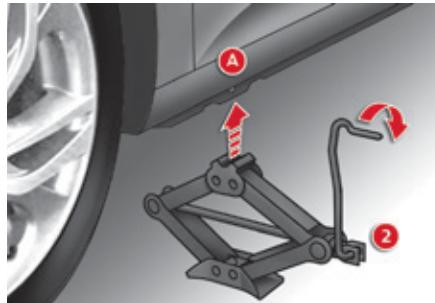
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe. If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

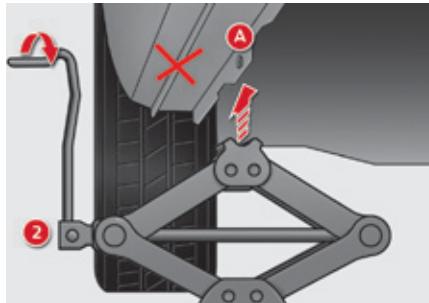


### List of operations

- ☞ Remove the chromed bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool 3 (according to equipment).
- ☞ Fit the security socket 4 on the wheelbrace 1 to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.



☞ Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!

Take care to position the jack only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle.

Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

## Fitting a wheel



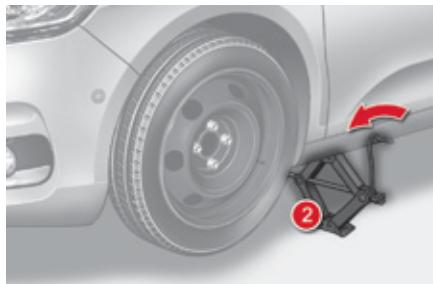
### **i** Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



### List of operations

- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 1 fitted with the security socket 4.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle fully.
- ☞ Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- ☞ Refit the chromed bolt covers on each of the bolts (according to equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools in the box.

## **i** After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

# Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**i** The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

| Original tyre size | Maximum link size.           |  |
|--------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 195/65 R15         | 9 mm                         |  |
| 205/55 R16         |                              |  |
| 225/45 R17         |                              |  |
| 225/40 R18         | cannot be fitted with chains |  |

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

**!** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

## Advice on installation

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

# Changing a bulb

- ! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:
- do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,
  - use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
  - when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- ! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).
- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth. It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
  - Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

## Front lamps



### Model with xenon and directional headlamps

- Directional dipped / main beam headlamps (D1S).
- Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
- Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W XL).
- Foglamps (H11).

### ! Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)

1. Direction indicators (H21 clear).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
3. Main beam headlamps (H1).
4. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W XL).
5. Foglamps (H11).

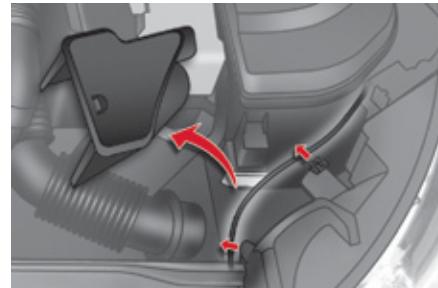
**i** Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.



### Model with halogen headlamps and LED light signature\* (type 2)

1. Direction indicators (LEDs).
2. Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).
3. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
4. Main beam headlamps (H7).
5. Foglamps (H11).

**i** Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.

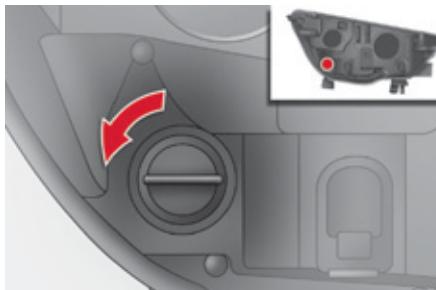


### Access to bulbs

Depending on the engine and only on the left hand side, you must first carry out the following operations for access to the protective covers on the bulbs.

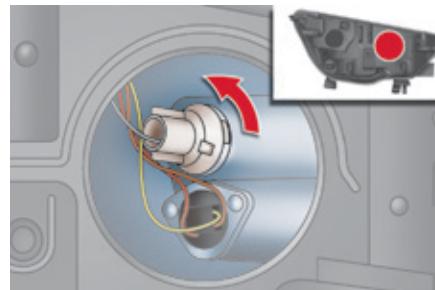
- ☞ Remove the air deflector by unclipping each of its three attachment points.
  - ☞ Unclip the bonnet release cable at its two fixings.
  - ☞ Move the cable down.
- After changing the failed bulb, remember to put everything back in place (cable and air deflector).

\* LED: light emitting diodes.



## Changing direction indicator bulbs

**i** Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.



### Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

### Model with halogen headlamps (type 2)

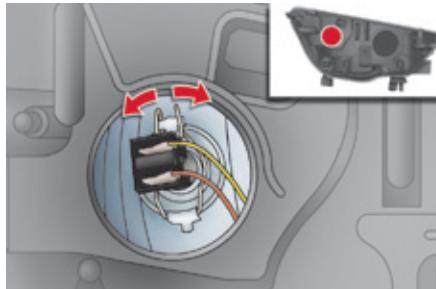
For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Model with Xenon headlamps

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling its tongue.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

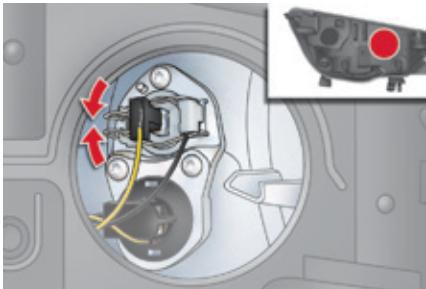
**i** Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.



### Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)

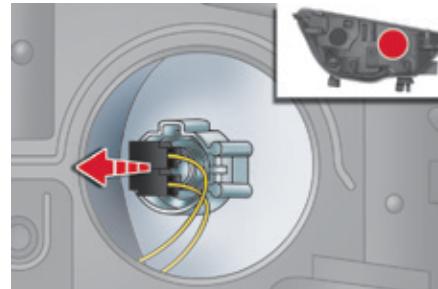
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
  - ☞ Disconnect the connector.
  - ☞ Spread the springs to release the bulb.
  - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.



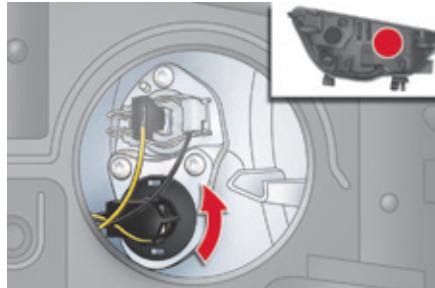
### Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with type 1 halogen headlamps)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
  - ☞ Disconnect the connector.
  - ☞ Squeeze the springs to release the bulb.
  - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.



### Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with type 2 halogen headlamps)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
  - ☞ Disconnect the connector.
  - ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.
- To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.



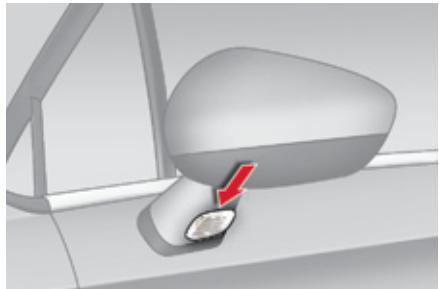
### **Changing daytime running lamp / sidelamp bulbs (on models with xenon or type 1 halogen headlamps)**

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

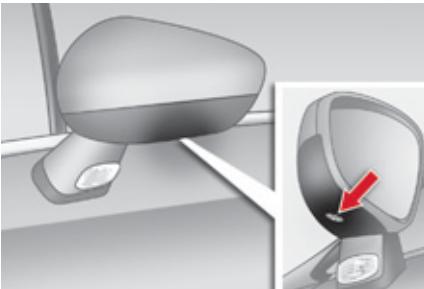
### **Changing daytime running lamps / sidelamps (on models with type 2 halogen headlamps)**

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
  - ☞ Tilt the flat screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
  - ☞ Disconnect the repeater connector.
- To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.



### Changing the side spotlamps (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Changing foglamp bulbs

- ☞ Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the finisher.
  - ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the bumper finisher (the parking sensor stays with the finisher).
  - ☞ Remove the two module fixing screws and remove it from its housing.
  - ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
  - ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
  - ☞ Pull the bulb and change it.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.  
To replace these bulbs you may also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Rear lamps

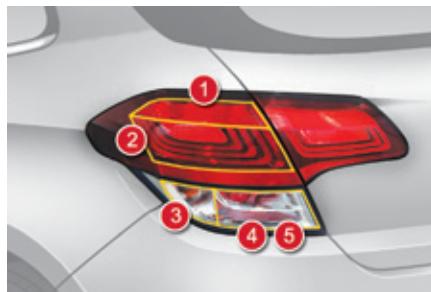


### Model with conventional lamps (type 1)

1. Brake lamp / sidelamp (P21/5W).
2. Direction indicator (PY21W amber).
3. Reversing lamp (P21W).
4. Rear foglamp (P21W).

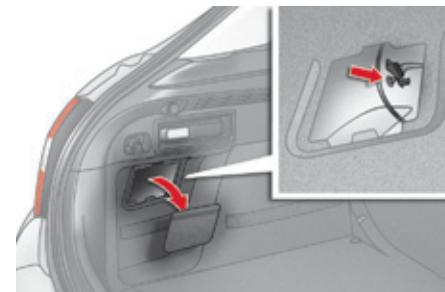


Amber bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour. The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.



### Model with 3D rear lamps

1. Brake lamp (P21W).
2. Sidelamp (R10W).
3. Direction indicator (PY21W amber).
4. Rear foglamp, offside (P21W).
5. Reversing lamp, nearside (P21W).

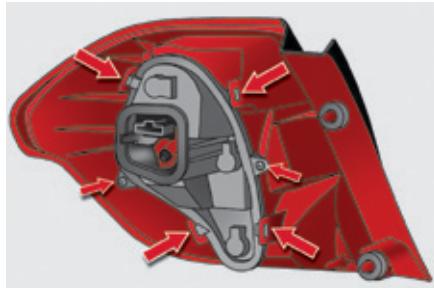


### Access to rear lamps

You will need a flat screwdriver and a 10 mm box spanner.

The four bulbs are changed from inside the boot:

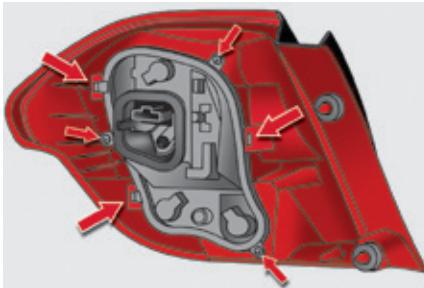
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ remove the access flap from the corresponding side trim panel,
- ☞ unclip the lamp unit connector,
- ☞ as a precaution, place a cloth in the bottom of the housing to catch the nut if it is dropped on removal,
- ☞ slacken the hexagonal nut using a 10 mm box spanner then remove the nut by hand,
- ☞ carefully remove the lamp unit by pulling out it straight out towards the rear.



### Changing rear lamp bulbs (type 1)

After removing the lamp unit, carry out the following operations to replace the failed bulb:

- ☞ remove the two bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.



### Changing rear lamp bulbs (type 2)

After removing the lamp unit, carry out the following operations to replace the failed bulb:

- ☞ remove the three bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ spread the three tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.  
Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without forcing, so as to avoid damaging the lamp.



### Number plate lamps (W5W)

To facilitate the removal of the lamp, carry out this operation with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the lens cutout.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

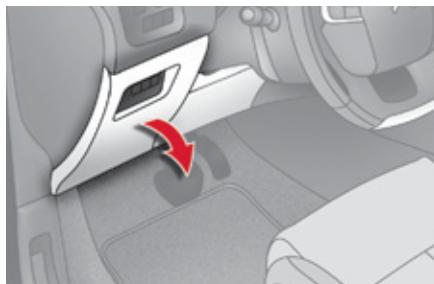


### Third brake lamp (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Changing a fuse

## Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer is attached to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

For access to it:

- ☞ unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left,
- ☞ disengage the cover completely and turn it over,



- ☞ remove the carrier, on the back of which the tweezer is fitted.

## Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and diagrams in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); the use of a fuse of different rating fuse may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good

Failed



Tweezer



### Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.

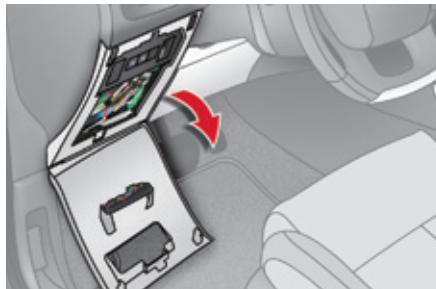
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

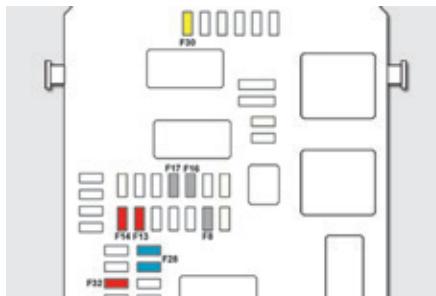
## Dashboard fuses

The fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).



### Access to the fuses

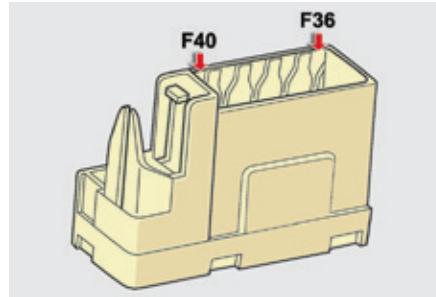
☞ Refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".



## Fuse tables

### Fusebox 1

| Fuse N°    | Rating      | Functions  |
|------------|-------------|--|
| <b>F8</b>  | <b>3 A</b>  | Alarm siren, alarm ECU.  |
| <b>F13</b> | <b>10 A</b> | 12 V socket.   |
| <b>F14</b> | <b>10 A</b> | 12 V socket in boot.   |
| <b>F16</b> | <b>3 A</b>  | Lighting for the large multifunctional storage unit, rear map reading lamps, glove box illumination. |
| <b>F17</b> | <b>3 A</b>  | Sun visor illumination, front map reading lamps.   |
| <b>F28</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Audio system, radio (after-market).  |
| <b>F30</b> | <b>20 A</b> | Rear wiper.  |
| <b>F32</b> | <b>10 A</b> | Hi-Fi amplifier.   |



**Fusebox 2**

| Fuse N°    | Rating      | Functions             |
|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| <b>F36</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Rear 12 V socket.     |
| <b>F37</b> | -           | Not used.             |
| <b>F38</b> | -           | Not used.             |
| <b>F39</b> | -           | Not used.             |
| <b>F40</b> | <b>25 A</b> | 230 V / 50 Hz socket. |

## Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).

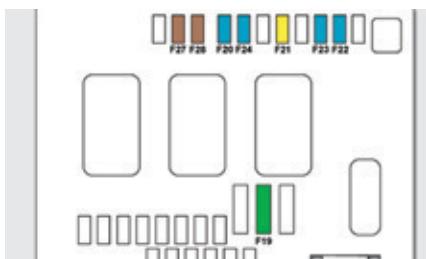


### Access to the fuses

- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse (see corresponding paragraph).
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure sealing of the fusebox.

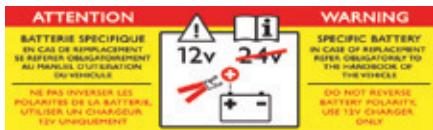
### Fuse table

| Fuse N°    | Rating      | Functions                            |
|------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>F19</b> | <b>30 A</b> | Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed. |
| <b>F20</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Front and rear screenwash pump.      |
| <b>F21</b> | <b>20 A</b> | Headlamp wash pump.                  |
| <b>F22</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Horn.                                |
| <b>F23</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Right-hand main beam headlamp.       |
| <b>F24</b> | <b>15 A</b> | Left-hand main beam headlamp.        |
| <b>F27</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | Left-hand dipped headlamp.           |
| <b>F28</b> | <b>5 A</b>  | Right-hand dipped headlamp.          |



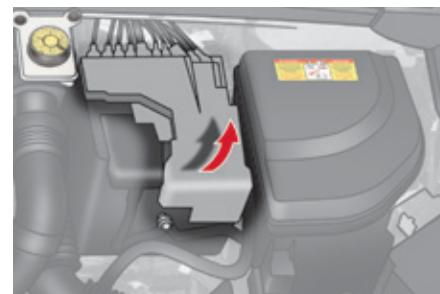
# 12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.



! The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

## Access to the battery



**i** After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

The battery is located under the bonnet.

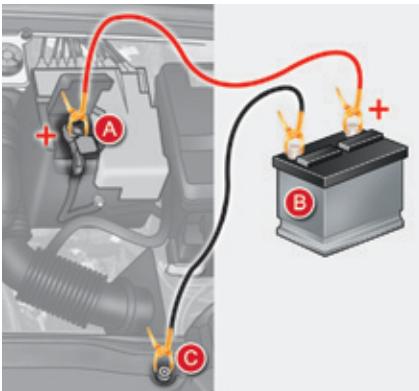
For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,
- ☞ lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

## Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables.

- !** First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
- Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
- Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- ☞ Remove the plastic cover from the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).

- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run. If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

### Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery. Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.

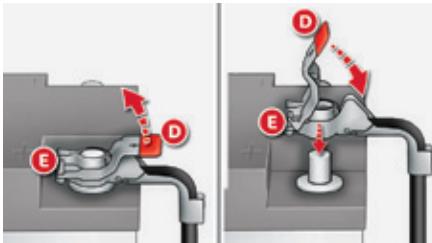
**i** Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

 The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.  
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

**i** It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

**!** Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.  
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.  
Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.  
Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.  
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.  
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.  
Wash your hands afterwards.

**!** Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if you have an electronic or automatic gearbox.



### Disconnecting the (+) cable

- Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

### Reconnecting the (+) cable

- Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.



Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

## Reinitialisation after reconnection

After any reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait at least one minute before starting, to allow time for the initialisation of the electronic systems.

By referring to the corresponding sections, you should set or initialise the following systems yourself:

- one-touch electric windows,
- time and date,
- audio and navigation system settings.

Check that no alert message or warning lamp comes on after switching on the ignition.

However, if minor problems persist after carrying out these operations, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger



With Stop & Start, the battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

- Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Connect the battery starting with the negative terminal (-).
- Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

## Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Energy economy mode

System which manages the period of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.



This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

## Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.



If the telephone is being used at the same time on the navigation system, it will be interrupted after 10 minutes.

## Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically the next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available to you will then be double the period for which the engine is left running. However, this period will always be between five and thirty minutes.



A flat battery prevents the engine from starting (refer to the corresponding paragraph).

# Changing a wiper blade

## Before removing a front wiper blade

- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

## Removing

- ☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

## Fitting

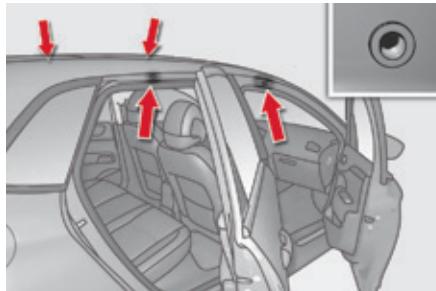
- ☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

## After fitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

## Fitting roof bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.



When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed.

The roof bar fixings include a stud to be fitted to the hole at each fixing point.

Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the bars.

- i** Maximum load distributed over the roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carriers):
- for roof bars with pads at **90 mm**: **50 kg**,
  - for roof bars with pads at **150 mm**: **80 kg**.
- For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to local legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

## Very cold climate screen\*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

### Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

### Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

- i** Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen when:
- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
  - towing,
  - driving at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

\* According to country.

# Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

## Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

## ! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited. The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

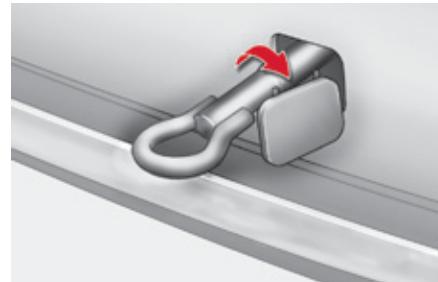
- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

## Towing your vehicle



- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
  - ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
  - ☞ Install the towing bar.
- 
- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the key in the ignition one notch and release the parking brake.
  - ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
  - ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## Towing another vehicle



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towing bar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

# Towing a trailer

Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.



We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.

## Driving advice

### Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

Refer to the "Technical data" section for details of the weights and towed loads which apply to your vehicle.

### Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

## Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant. As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

## Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes on a long mountain type of descent, the use of engine braking is recommended.

## Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

## Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer.



The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

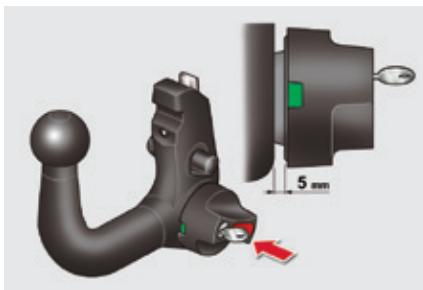
# Towbar with quickly detachable towball

## Presentation



This towbar allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without the use of tools. Installed behind the rear bumper, the towbar is invisible after removing the towball and folding the trailer harness socket carrier.

1. Carrier
2. Protective blanking plug.
3. Security ring.
4. Folding trailer harness socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking / unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Locking wheel protector.
9. Ball protector.
10. Storage bag.

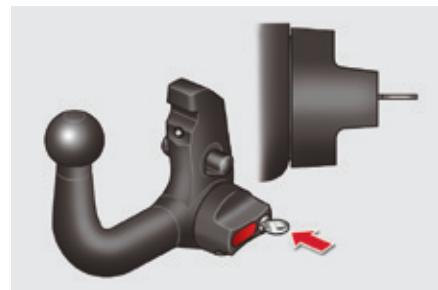


### A. Locked position

The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).

The green mark is visible.

The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.



### B. Unlocked position

The locking wheel is in contact with the towball. Then green mark is hidden.

The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward.



Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.



For information on the maximum trailer weight and the recommended nose weight, refer to the "Technical data" section.

For information on safely towing a trailer, refer to the "Towing a trailer" section.

## **i Before each use**

Check that the towball is correctly fitted by verifying the following points:

- the towball is correctly locked in place (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must no longer move at all in its carrier; try to shake it by hand.

## **During use**

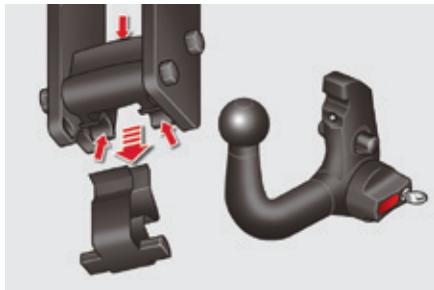
Never unlock the device when a trailer or load carrier is fitted to the towball.

Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle plus trailer (Gross Train Weight - GTW).

## **After use**

For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer harness socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

## Fitting the towball



Remove the protective plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system. If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or clean cloth.

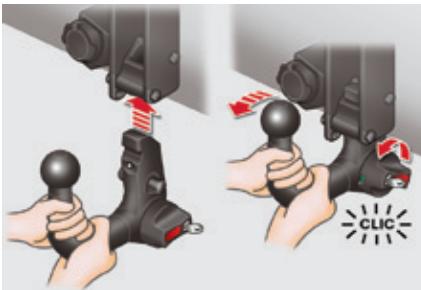
Take the towball from the storage bag.

Remove the protective cover from the ball and the protective cap from the locking wheel.

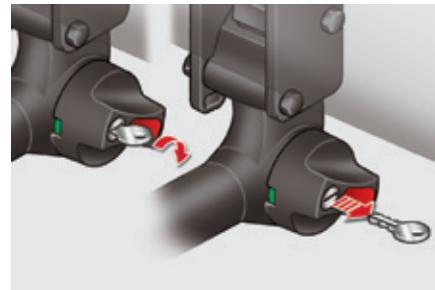
Stow the plug, cover and cap in the storage bag.

Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**).

If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the mechanism.



Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier by lifting it, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, pull firmly down on the ball end of the towball. The locking wheel automatically turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise, making a perceptible click; take care to keep your hands clear.



Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position **A**).

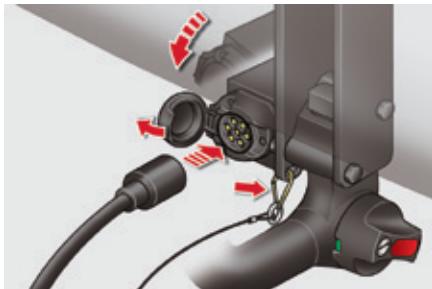
Turn the key clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.

Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

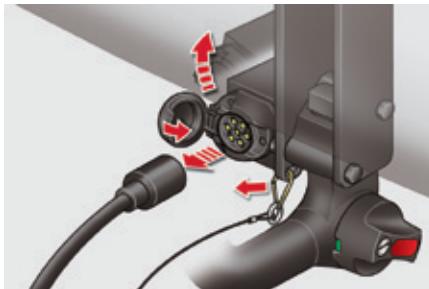


If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again. If one of the locking conditions is not met, start the procedure again. In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towbar and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

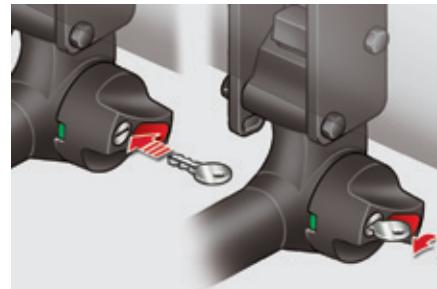
## Removing the towball



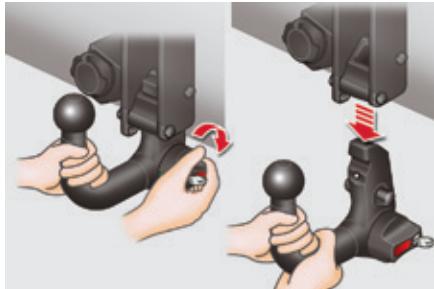
Attach the trailer to the towball.  
Attach the cable on the trailer to the security ring located on the carrier.  
Lower the trailer harness socket carrier by pulling down on the ring visible below the bumper.  
Remove the protective cover from the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.



Disconnect the trailer harness from the socket on the carrier.  
Detach the cable on the trailer from the security ring on the carrier.  
Unhook the trailer from the towball.  
Return the trailer harness connector carrier to the folded position.



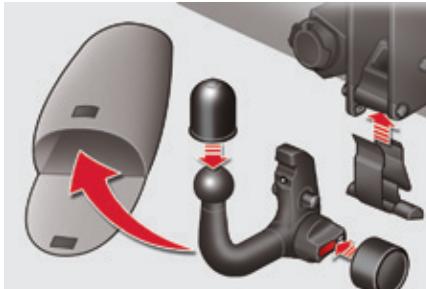
Insert the key into the lock.  
Turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.



Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.  
Extract the towball downward.



Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!



Refit the protective cover for the ball and the protective cover for the locking wheel.  
Stow the towball in its bag.  
Refit the protective blanking plug to the carrier.

## Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier remain clean.

Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the towbar harness socket carrier must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier.

For any work on the towbar, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Audio pre-equipment

Your vehicle is equipped with certain factory-fitted audio equipment:

- a dual-function aerial at the rear of the roof,
- a coaxial aerial cable,
- basic interference suppression,
- cabling for speakers in the front doors and tweeters in the dashboard,
- cabling for speakers in the rear doors,
- two 8-way connectors.

**i** Before installing a radio unit or speakers in your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a suitable wiring harness.

## Fitting an audio unit



The audio unit is fitted in place of one of the storage boxes located above the heating and air conditioning control panel.

- ☞ Unclip the storage box on each side using a screwdriver and pull out.

You will then have access to an aerial coaxial cable and two 8-way connectors.

Then refer to the instructions provided with your audio unit.

## Fitting speakers

It is possible to fit:

- 165 mm diameter speakers in the front doors,
- 130 mm diameter speakers in the rear doors,
- 22.5 mm diameter tweeters in the top of the dashboard.

## Connectors

### 8-way connector (A)

- A1: -
- A2: -
- A3: -
- A4: -
- A5: -
- A6: (+) Ignition positive (in this case, the audio equipment only operates when the ignition is on)
- A7: (+) Permanent
- A8: Earth

### 8-way connector (B)

- B1: (+) Rear right speaker
- B2: (-) Rear right speaker
- B3: (+) Front right speaker and tweeter
- B4: (-) Front right speaker and tweeter
- B5: (+) Front left speaker and tweeter
- B6: (-) Front left speaker and tweeter
- B7: (+) Rear left speaker
- B8: (-) Rear left speaker

! Never use a separate wire to connect the (+) of your audio equipment (risk of discharging of the battery).

# Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.

These accessories and parts are all suitable for your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

## Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a trade vehicle to a private car and vice-versa.

## "Transport systems":

boot carpet, boot liner, boot net, boot spacers, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

## "Security and safety":

anti-intrusion alarm, microwave sensor, anti-tilt sensor, stolen vehicle tracking system, child seats and booster cushions, breathalyser, first aid kit, fire extinguisher, warning triangle, high visibility vest, dog guard, pet seat belt, wheel security bolts, snow chains, non-slip covers, front foglamp kit...

## "Comfort":

door deflectors, side window blinds, rear screen blind, insulated module, coat hanger fixed to head restraint, reading lamp, mirror for caravan, cruise control, scented air freshener and cartridges, parking sensors...

## "Styling":

gear lever knobs, aluminium foot rest, alloy wheels, wheel embellishers, chrome mirror shells, chrome door aperture finishers, door sill finishers, tailgate lower chrome finisher...

## "Protection":

mats\*, seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, door sill protectors, mud flaps, door protective rubbing strips, bumper protection strips, protective covers for pets, vehicle cover...



If a towbar and wiring harness are fitted outside the CITROËN dealer network, the installation must be done using the vehicle's electrical pre-equipment and in line with the manufacturer's recommendations.

- \* To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
  - ensure that mats are correctly positioned and secured,
  - never fit one mat on top of another.

## "Multimedia":

audio systems, steering mounted audio controls, speakers, Hi-Fi module, Bluetooth hands-free system, portable satellite navigation system, semi-integral support bracket for portable navigation system, mapping update CD, driving assistant, portable video screen, portable video support bracket, 230 V/50 Hz socket, 230 V/50 Hz adaptor, iPhone® compatible mobile phone charger, mobile phone/smartphone bracket, Wi-Fi on board...

### **i Installation of radio communication transmitters**

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

By going to a CITROËN dealer, you can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (interior and exterior) - including ecological products in the "TECHNATURE" range -, products for topping up (screenwash...), touch-up pens and paint aerosols for the exact colour of your vehicle, recharges (cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...), ...

**i** Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

**!** The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

# Petrol engines and gearboxes

| Petrol engine                          | VTi 95              | Puretech 110             | VTi 120             |                        |
|--|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| Gearbox                                | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed)      | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Automatic<br>(4-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...                   | 8FR0                | HNZ6<br>HNZ6/1<br>HNZ6/2 | 5FS0                | 5FS9<br>5FS9/D         |
| Cubic capacity (cc)                    | 1 397               | 1 199                    |                     | 1 598                  |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                     | 77 x 72.5           | 75 x 90.5                |                     | 77 x 85.8              |
| Max power*: EU standard (kW)           | 70                  | 81                       |                     | 88                     |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)           | 6 000               | 5 500                    |                     | 6 000                  |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)           | 135                 | 205                      |                     | 160                    |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)          | 4 000               | 1 500                    |                     | 4 250                  |
| Fuel                                   | Unleaded            | Unleaded                 |                     | Unleaded               |
| Catalytic converter                    | Yes                 | Yes                      |                     | Yes                    |
| <b>Engine oil capacity (in litres)</b> | 4.25                | 3.5                      |                     | 4.25                   |

\* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

| Petrol engine                          | Puretech 130 S&S    |                              | THP 155                      |
|--|---------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Gearbox                                | Manual<br>(6-speed) | EAT6 Automatic<br>(6-speed)  | ETG6 Electronic<br>(6-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...                   | HNYM/S<br>HNYM/1S   | HNYT/S<br>HNYT/1S<br>HNYT/2S | 5FV8/P                       |
| Cubic capacity (cc)                    |                     | 1 199                        | 1 598                        |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                     |                     | 70 x 90.5                    | 77 x 85.8                    |
| Max power*: EU standard (kW)           |                     | 96                           | 115                          |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)           |                     | 5 500                        | 6 000                        |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)           |                     | 230                          | 240                          |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)          |                     | 1 750                        | 1 400                        |
| Fuel                                   | Unleaded            |                              | Unleaded                     |
| Catalytic converter                    | Yes                 |                              | Yes                          |
| <b>Engine oil capacity (in litres)</b> |                     | 3.5                          | 4.25                         |

\* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

# Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

| Petrol engine   | VTi 95              | Puretech 110        | VTi 120             |                        |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| Gearbox   | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Automatic<br>(4-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...  | 8FR0                | HNZ6<br>HNZ6/1 -/2  | 5FS0                | 5FS9<br>5FS9/D         |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 200               | 1 200               | 1 205               | 1 270                  |
| - Kerb weight*  | 1 275               | 1 275               | 1 280               | 1 345                  |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                    | 1 720               | 1 770               | 1 765               | 1 755                  |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient                | 2 920               | 2 970               | 3 065               | 3 055                  |
| - Braked trailer (within the GTW limit)<br>on a 12 % gradient   | 1 200               | 1 200               | 1 300               | 1 300                  |
| - Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the<br>GTW limit) | 1 450               | 1 450               | 1 550               | 1 550                  |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 635                 | 635                 | 640                 | 670                    |
| - Recommended nose weight                                       | 75                  | 75                  | 75                  | 75                     |

\* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

\*\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount.

Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

| Petrol engine   | Puretech 130 S&S    |                             | THP 155                      |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Gearbox   | Manual<br>(6-speed) | EAT6 Automatic<br>(6-speed) | ETG6 Electronic<br>(6-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...  | HNYM/S<br>HNYM/1S   | HNYT/S<br>HNYT/1S -/2S      | 5FV8/P                       |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 205               | 1 240                       | 1 275                        |
| - Kerb weight*  | 1 280               | 1 315                       | 1 350                        |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                    | 1 790               | 1 810                       | 1 805                        |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12% gradient                 | 3 090               | 3 110                       | 3 205                        |
| - Braked trailer (within the GTW limit)<br>on a 12% gradient    | 1 300               | 1 300                       | 1 400                        |
| - Braked trailer** (with load transfer within<br>the GTW limit) | 1 550               | 1 550                       | 1 650                        |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 640                 | 655                         | 675                          |
| - Recommended nose weight                                       | 75                  | 75                          | 75                           |

\* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

\*\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount.

Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

# Diesel engines and gearboxes

| Diesel engine                          | HDI 90              | HDI 90 FAP          | BlueHDI 100               | e-HDI 115                    |                                 |  |
|--|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| Gearbox                                | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed)       | Manual<br>(6-speed)          | ETG6<br>Electronic<br>(6-speed) |  |
| Model code:<br>NC...                   | 9HJC<br>9HJC/1      | 9HP0                | BHY6<br>BHY6/1<br>BHY6/2S | 9HD8/S<br>9HD8/1S<br>9HD8/2S | 9HD8/1PS<br>9HD8/2PS            |  |
| Cubic capacity (cc)                    | 1 560               |                     | 1 560                     |                              | 1 560                           |  |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                     | 75 x 88.3           |                     | 75 x 88.3                 |                              | 75 x 88.3                       |  |
| Max power*: EU standard (kW)           | 68                  |                     | 68                        |                              | 73                              |  |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)           | 4 000               |                     | 4 000                     |                              | 3 750                           |  |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)           | 230                 |                     | 230                       |                              | 254                             |  |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)          | 1 750               |                     | 1 750                     |                              | 1 750                           |  |
| Fuel                                   | Diesel              |                     | Diesel                    |                              | Diesel                          |  |
| Catalytic converter                    | Yes                 |                     | Yes                       |                              | Yes                             |  |
| Particle filter (FAP)                  | No                  |                     | Yes                       |                              | Yes                             |  |
| <b>Engine oil capacity (in litres)</b> | 3.75                |                     | 3.75                      |                              | 3.75                            |  |

\* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

| Diesel engine                          | BlueHDI 115                  |                                | BlueHDI 120                  |                                | HDI 150 FAP         | BlueHDI 150                    |
|--|------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Gearbox                                | Manual<br>(6-speed)          | EAT6<br>Automatic<br>(6-speed) | Manual<br>(6-speed)          | EAT6<br>Automatic<br>(6-speed) | Manual<br>(6-speed) | EAT6<br>Automatic<br>(6-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...                   | BHXM/S<br>BHXM/1S<br>BHXM/2S | BHXT/S<br>BHXT/1S<br>BHXT/2S   | BHZM/S<br>BHZM/1S<br>BHZM/2S | BHZT/S<br>BHZT/1S<br>BHZT/2S   | RHE8<br>RHE8/1      | AHRM/S<br>AHRM/1S<br>AHRM/2S   |
| Cubic capacity (cc)                    | 1 560                        |                                | 1 560                        |                                | 1 997               | 1 997                          |
| Bore x stroke (mm)                     | 75 x 88.3                    |                                | 75 x 88.3                    |                                | 85 x 88             | 85 x 88                        |
| Max power*: EU standard (kW)           | 85                           |                                | 88                           |                                | 110                 | 110                            |
| Max power engine speed (rpm)           | 3 500                        |                                | 3 500                        |                                | 3 750               | 4 000                          |
| Max torque: EU standard (Nm)           | 300                          |                                | 300                          |                                | 340                 | 370                            |
| Max torque engine speed (rpm)          | 1 750                        |                                | 1 750                        |                                | 2 000               | 2 000                          |
| Fuel                                   | Diesel                       |                                | Diesel                       |                                | Diesel              | Diesel                         |
| Catalytic converter                    | Yes                          |                                | Yes                          |                                | Yes                 | Yes                            |
| Particle filter (FAP)                  | Yes                          |                                | Yes                          |                                | Yes                 | Yes                            |
| <b>Engine oil capacity (in litres)</b> | 3.75                         |                                | 3.75                         |                                | 5.25                | 6.1                            |

\* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.

.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).

.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

# Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

| Diesel engine   | HDi 90              | HDi 90 FAP          | BlueHDI 100         |         | e-HDI 115           |         |
|---|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------|---------------------|---------|
| Gearbox   | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(5-speed) | Manual<br>(6-speed) |         | Manual<br>(6-speed) |         |
| Model code:<br>NC...  | 9HJC<br>9HJC/1      | 9HP0                | BHY6<br>BHY6/1      | BHY6/2S | 9HD8/S<br>9HD8/1S   | 9HD8/2S |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 248               | 1 205               | 1 200               | 1 205   | 1 280               | 1 280   |
| - Kerb weight*  | 1 323               | 1 280               | 1 275               | 1 280   | 1 355               | 1 355   |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                  | 1 745               | 1 790               | 1 830               | 1 840   | 1 820               | 1 820   |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient              | 2 545               | 2 890               | 3 130               | 3 140   | 3 120               | 2 220   |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on 12 % gradient       | 800                 | 1 100               | 1 300               | 1 300   | 1 300               | 400     |
| - Braked trailer** (with load transfer<br>with the GTW limit) | 1 050               | 1 350               | 1 550               | 1 550   | 1 550               | 600     |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 640                 | 640                 | 635                 | 640     | 670                 | 400     |
| - Recommended nose weight                                     | 75                  | 75                  | 75                  | 75      | 75                  | 75      |

\* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

\*\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning:  
towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

| Diesel engine   | e-HDi 115                    |          | BlueHDI 115            |                             |
|---|------------------------------|----------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Gearbox   | ETG6 Electronic<br>(6-speed) |          | Manual<br>(6-speed)    | EAT6 Automatic<br>(6-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...  | 9HD8/1PS                     | 9HD8/2PS | BHXM/S<br>BHXM/1S -/2S | BHXT/S<br>BHXT/1S -/2S      |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 205                        | 1 205    | 1 280                  | 1 300                       |
| - Kerb weight*  | 1 280                        | 1 280    | 1 355                  | 1 375                       |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                  | 1 825                        | 1 825    | 1 860                  | 1 880                       |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on 12 % gradient                | 3 125                        | 2 225    | 3 160                  | 3 080                       |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 12 % gradient     | 1 300                        | 400      | 1 300                  | 1 200                       |
| - Braked trailer** (with load transfer<br>with the GTW limit) | 1 550                        | 600      | 1 550                  | 1 450                       |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 635                          | 400      | 675                    | 685                         |
| - Recommended nose weight                                     | 75                           | 75       | 75                     | 75                          |

\* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning:  
towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for  
each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C,  
limit the towed load.

| Diesel engine   | BlueHDi 120            |                             | HDI 150 FAP         | BlueHDi 150                 |
|---|------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Gearbox   | Manual<br>(6-speed)    | EAT6 Automatic<br>(6-speed) | Manual<br>(6-speed) | EAT6 Automatic<br>(6-speed) |
| Model code:<br>NC...  | BHZM/S<br>BHZM/1S -/2S | BHZT/S<br>BHZT/1S -/2S      | RHE8<br>RHE8/1      | AHRM/S<br>AHRM/1S -/2S      |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 280                  | 1 300                       | 1 320               | 1 360                       |
| - Kerb weight*  | 1 355                  | 1 375                       | 1 395               | 1 435                       |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                  | 1 860                  | 1 880                       | 1 885               | 1 925                       |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12% gradient               | 3 160                  | 3 080                       | 3 385               | 3 425                       |
| - Braked trailer (within GTW limit)<br>on a 12% gradient      | 1 300                  | 1 200                       | 1 500               | 1 500                       |
| - Braked trailer** (with load transfer with the<br>GTW limit) | 1 550                  | 1 450                       | 1 750               | 1 750                       |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 675                    | 685                         | 695                 | 715                         |
| - Recommended nose weight                                     | 75                     | 75                          | 75                  | 75                          |

\* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

\*\* The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning:  
towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for  
each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C,  
limit the towed load.

# Weights and towed loads (in kg)

## C4 Enterprise versions (2-seat)

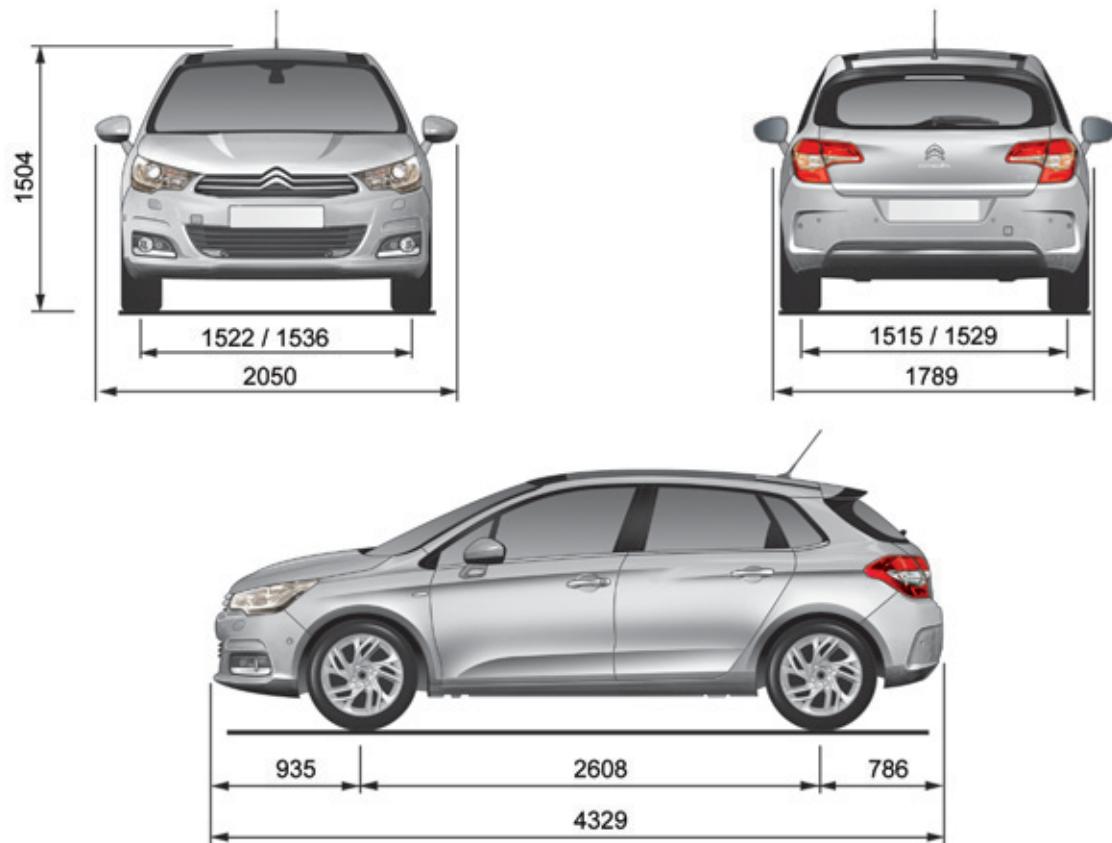
| Diesel engine   | HDi 90 FAP                  | HDi 115                     | e-HDi 115                   | BlueHDI 100                 | BlueHDI 120                 |
|---|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Gearbox</b>  | <b>Manual<br/>(5-speed)</b> | <b>Manual<br/>(6-speed)</b> | <b>Manual<br/>(6-speed)</b> | <b>Manual<br/>(5-speed)</b> | <b>Manual<br/>(6-speed)</b> |
| <b>Model code:<br/>NR...</b>                                  | <b>9HP0<br/>9HP0/1</b>      | <b>9HD8<br/>9HD8/1</b>      | <b>9HD8/1S<br/>9HD7/1S</b>  | <b>BHY6/1</b>               | <b>BHZM/1S</b>              |
| - Unladen weight  | 1 313                       | 1 283                       | 1 283                       | 1 326                       | 1 389                       |
| - Gross vehicle weight (GVW)                                  | 1 745                       | 1 810                       | 1 810                       | 1 775                       | 1 840                       |
| - Payload (including the driver)                              | 432                         | 527                         | 527                         | 449                         | 451                         |
| - Gross train weight (GTW)<br>on a 12 % gradient              | 2 845                       | 3 110                       | 3 110                       | 3 075                       | 3 090                       |
| - Braked trailer (within the GTW limit)<br>on a 12 % gradient | 1 100                       | 1 300                       | 1 300                       | 1 300                       | 1 250                       |
| - Unbraked trailer  | 635                         | 670                         | 670                         | 650                         | 685                         |
| - Recommended nose weight                                     | 75                          | 75                          | 75                          | 75                          | 75                          |

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

## Dimensions (in mm)



# Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



## A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the bodywork near the suspension damper mounting.

## B. Vehicle identification number on the dashboard.

This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

## C. Manufacturer's label.

The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the driver's centre pillar.

## D. Tyre/paint label.

This label is affixed to the driver's front pillar.

It bears the following information:

- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

**i** The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.



Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.



## EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

# EMERGENCY OR ASSISTANCE CALL

## CITROËN Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the CITROËN Localised Emergency Call centre\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call. The green LED goes off.

Pressing this button (at any time) for more than 8 seconds cancels the call.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of communication.

This call is dealt with by the CITROËN Localised Emergency Call centre which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services. In countries in which the team is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.



If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

If you benefit from the CITROËN eTouch offer, you also have available additional services in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com).

\* These services are subject to conditions and availability.  
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## CITROËN Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.  
A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.  
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

## Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.  
If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.  
In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.



# 7-inch touch screen tablet

## GPS satellite navigation system

## Multimedia audio system

## Bluetooth® telephone



The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.



For safety reasons, the driver must carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the system switches off following the activation of the energy economy mode.

## CONTENTS

|                                       |               |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>01 General operation</b>           | <b>p. 290</b> |
| <b>02 First steps - Control panel</b> | <b>p. 292</b> |
| <b>03 Steering mounted controls</b>   | <b>p. 293</b> |
| <b>04 Media</b>                       | <b>p. 294</b> |
| <b>05 Navigation</b>                  | <b>p. 312</b> |
| <b>06 Configuration</b>               | <b>p. 332</b> |
| <b>07 Connected services</b>          | <b>p. 340</b> |
| <b>08 Telephone</b>                   | <b>p. 342</b> |
| <b>Frequently asked questions</b>     | <b>p. 352</b> |

# 01 GENERAL OPERATION



## "Navigation"\*

allows settings for navigation and the choice of a destination.



## "Telephone"

allows the connection of a mobile telephone via Bluetooth.



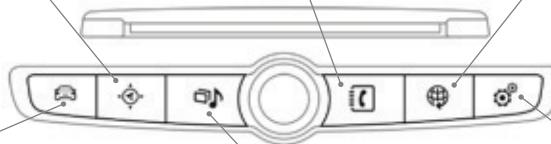
## "Connected services"\*

allows connection to an applications portal to facilitate, make safe and personalise journeys by means of a connection key available on subscription from a CITROËN dealer.



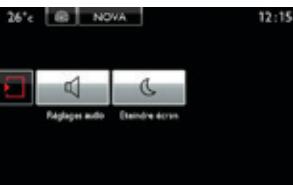
## "Driving assistance"

allows access to the trip computer and certain vehicle functions to be activated, deactivated and adjusted.



## "Media"

allows selection of a radio station, the various music sources and the display of photographs.



## "Configuration"

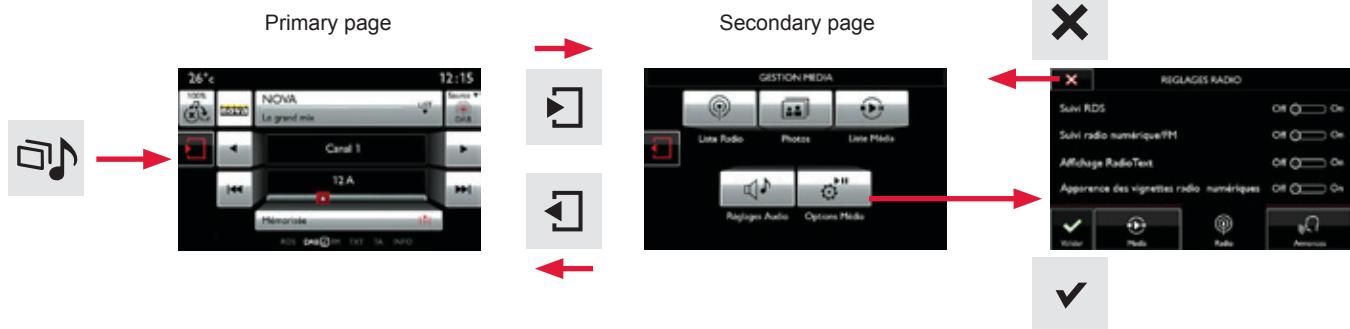
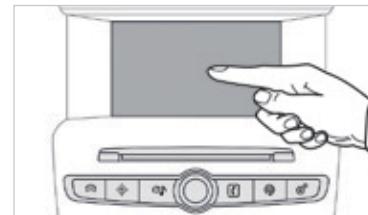
allows sound settings and the brightness of instruments and controls to be adjusted.

\* Depending on equipment.

# 01 GENERAL OPERATION

Use the buttons below the touch screen tablet for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.

Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

## 02 FIRST STEPS

With the engine running, press to mute the sound.

With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.

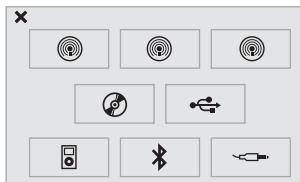
Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including Traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).



Short-cuts: using the touch buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Following prolonged operation in sunny conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "AM" / "DAB" stations.
- "USB" memory stick.
- CD player (located in front panel).
- Jukebox\*, after first copying audio files to the internal memory of the system.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth\* and audio streaming Bluetooth\* (streaming).
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.

The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.



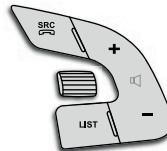
To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.

Do not use pointed objects on the screen.

Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

\* Depending on equipment.

## 03 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS



- Short press:  
Change the multimedia source.  
Accept an incoming call.  
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
- Long press:  
Reject an incoming call.  
End a call in progress.  
Other than call in progress: access to the telephone menu (Dial, Contacts, Call log, Answerphone).



- Rotation.  
Radio: automatic search for previous / next station.  
Media: previous / next track.
- Press: confirmation.



- Short press:  
Radio: display the list of stations.  
Media: display the list of tracks.
- Long press: update the list of stations received.



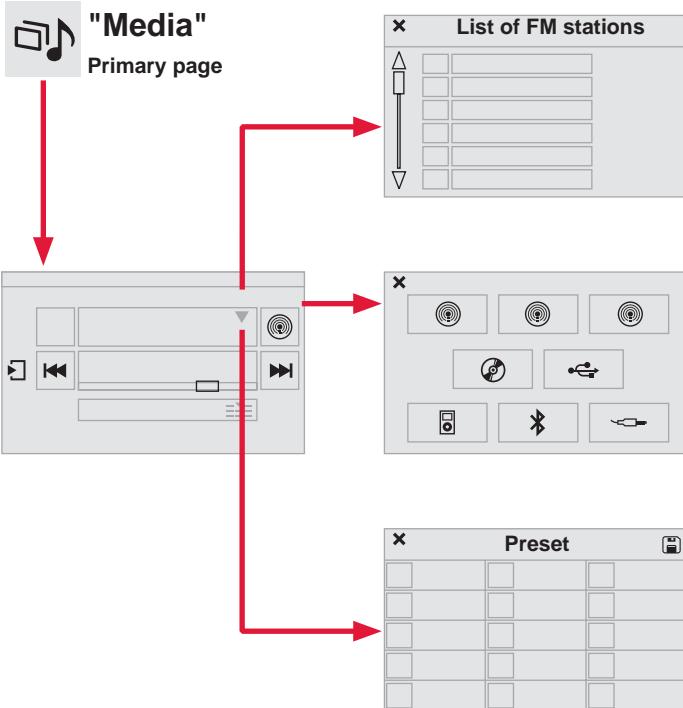
- Increase volume.
- Decrease volume.

# 04 MEDIA



Level 1

Level 2



| Level 1   | Level 2   | Comments                                      |
|---|---|---|
| <br><br> <p>Media<br/>↓<br/>List<br/>→</p>   | <br><p>List of FM stations</p>   | <p>Press on a radio station to select it.</p> |
| <br><br> <p>Media<br/>↓<br/>Source<br/>→</p> | <br><p>FM Radio</p> <hr/> <br><p>DAB Radio</p> <hr/> <br><p>AM Radio</p> <hr/> <br><p>Jukebox</p> <hr/> <br><p>CD</p> <hr/> <br><p>USB</p> <hr/> <br><p>iPod</p> <hr/> <br><p>Bluetooth</p> <hr/> <br><p>AUX</p> | <p>Select change of source.</p>               |
| <br><br> <p>Media<br/>↓<br/>Preset<br/>→</p> |    | <p>Press an empty location to Preset it.</p>  |

# 04 MEDIA



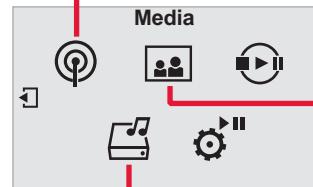
Level 1



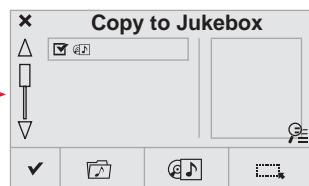
"Media"



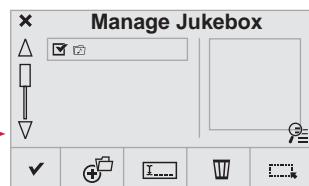
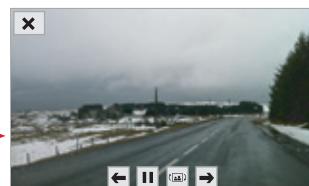
Secondary page



Level 2



Level 3



| Level 1  |   | Level 2   |  | Level 3 |  | Comments   |  |  |
|--|---|---|--|---------|--|--|--|--|
| <br><br> | <b>Media</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Radio list</b><br>→     |  <b>Preset</b>           |  |         |  | Press a radio station to select it.                            |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Update list</b>      |  |         |  | Update the list of stations received.                          |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Frequency</b>        |  |         |  | Enter the desired radio frequency.                             |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Confirm</b>          |  |         |  | Save the settings.   |  |  |
| <br><br> | <b>Media</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Photos</b><br>→         |  <b>Page selection</b>   |  |         |  | Display the selected photo full screen.                        |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Rotate</b>           |  |         |  | Rotate the photo 90°.  |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Select all</b>       |  |         |  | Select all the photos in the list.<br>Press again to deselect. |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Slideshow</b>        |  <b>Previous photo.</b>   |         |  | Display the photos in sequence, full screen.                   |  |  |
|  |   |   |   <b>Pause / Play.</b> |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  <b>Next photo.</b>   |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Confirm</b>          |  |         |  | Save the settings.   |  |  |
| <br><br> | <b>Media</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Manage Jukebox</b><br>→ |  <b>Sort by folder</b>   |  |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Sort by album</b>    |  |         |  | Choose the selection mode.                                     |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Select all</b>       |  |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |  <b>Magnifying glass</b> |  <b>Create folder</b>   |         |  | Choose the handling mode.                                      |  |  |
|  |   |   |  <b>Rename</b>  |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  <b>Delete</b>  |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  <b>Select all</b>  |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>   |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  <b>Copy</b>  |         |  |  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  |         |  | Save the options.  |  |  |
|  |   |   |  |         |  | Copy files to the Jukebox.                                     |  |  |

# 04 MEDIA



Level 1

Level 2

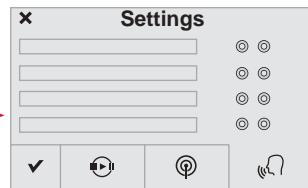
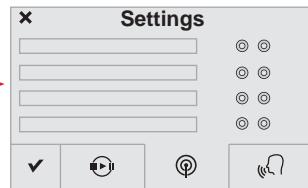
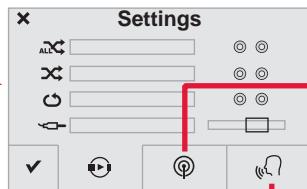
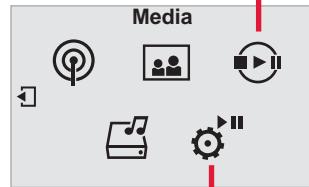
Level 3



"Media"



Secondary page



| Level 1  | Level 2  | Level 3  | Comments                             |
|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
|  Media<br> Secondary page<br> Media list<br> |  |  | Presentation of the last media used. |
|  Media<br> Secondary page<br> Settings<br>   |  Media<br> Settings<br>         |  Random (all tracks):<br> Random (current album):<br> Loop:<br> Aux. amplification | Choose the play settings.            |
|  Media<br> Secondary page<br> Settings<br>   |  Radio<br> Settings<br>         |  RDS options<br> DAB/FM options<br> Display Radio Text<br> DAB radio thumbnails    | Activate or deactivate the options.  |
|  |  Announcements<br> Settings<br> |  Traffic announcements (TA)<br> Weather<br> Varied - Sport<br> Alert settings      | Activate or deactivate the options.  |
|  |  Confirm  |  | Save the settings.                   |

# 04 RADIO

## Selecting a station

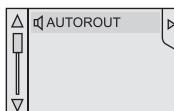
- 1a**  
Press on **Media** to display the primary page.  
or  
Press on **Media** to display the primary page  
then go to the secondary page.



- 2a**  
Select "**List**" in the primary page.  
or  
Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



- 3a**  
Select a radio station from the list offered.



- 3b**  
Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.



- 1b**  
Press **Media** to display the primary  
page then select "**Preset**".



OR

- 2b**  
Select a preset radio station in the list.



- 1**  
If necessary, select change of source.



- 2**  
Select "**FM Radio**" or "**AM Radio**".



! The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

# 04 RADIO

## Changing a radio frequency

1a

Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



2a

**By automatic frequency search**

Press **◀** or **▶** to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.



OR

1b

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then press on the secondary page.



2b

Press on "Enter frequency" to display the primary page then press on the secondary page.



THEN

3a

Select change source.



FM

3b

Select "FM Radio" or "AM Radio".



OR

3c

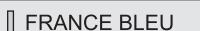
Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "Confirm".



3d

**By alphabetical list**

Press the current radio band then choose the radio station from the list offered.



# 04 RADIO

## Preset a station

- 1 Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).

- 2 Press on "Preset".



- 3 Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.  
A long press on a number presets (memorises) the station.  
Or  
A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.



## Recall pre-set stations

- Press on **Media** to display the primary page then select "Save".



# 04 RADIO

## Activate/ Deactivate RDS

1

Press on **Media** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Settings**".



3

Select "**Radio**".



4

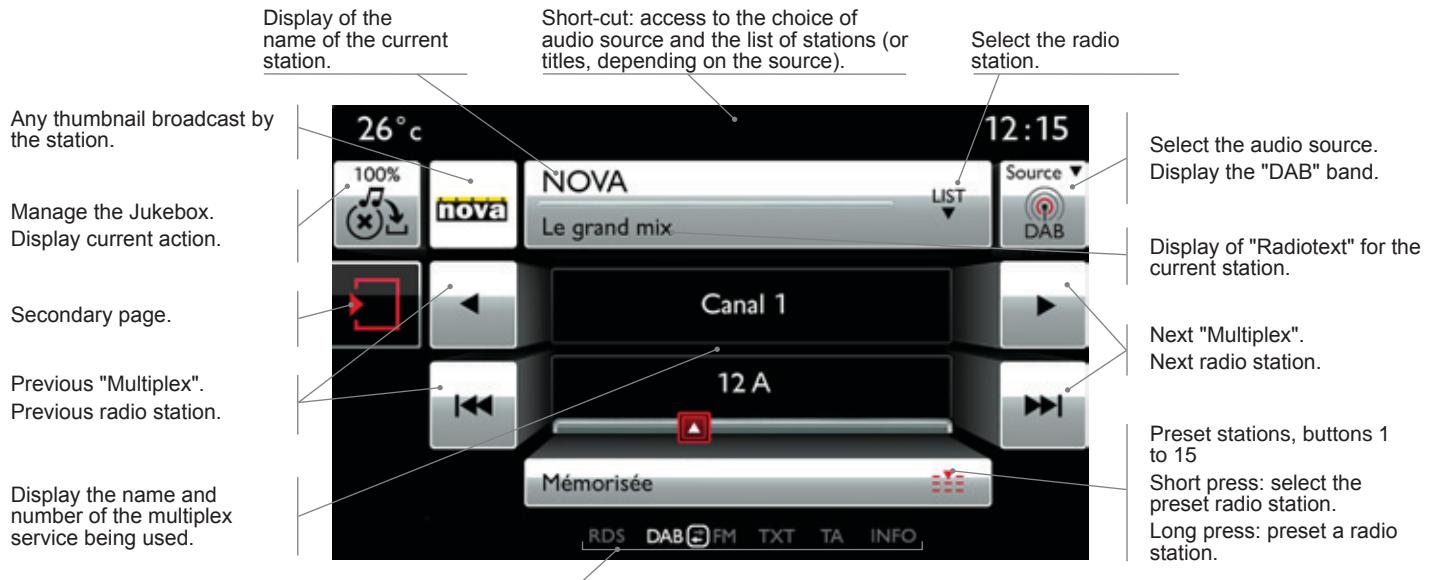
Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".



i

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

# 04 RADIO



Display of options:  
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,  
if active and available, the display will be blank.

**i** If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.



Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.  
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.  
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

# 04 RADIO

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) Digital radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page. The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.

1 Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



2 Select change of source.



3 Select "DAB Radio".

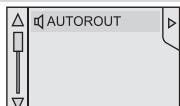


4 Select "List" in the primary page.  
or

Select "Radio list" in the secondary page.



5 Select the radio station from the list offered.



## Digital radio - DAB / FM auto tracking

! "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

1 Press **Media** to display the primary page then press on the secondary page.



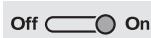
2 Select "**Settings**".



3 Select "**RADIO**".



4 Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then **"Confirm"**.



! If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("DAB / FM" option greyed out), or "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

# 04 MUSIC

## CD, MP3 CD, USB player, auxiliary input



Insert the CD in the player, insert the USB memory stick in the USB player or connect the USB peripheral to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied)



The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. However, the system memorises these lists and if they are not modified, the loading time will be shorter.



### Selection of source

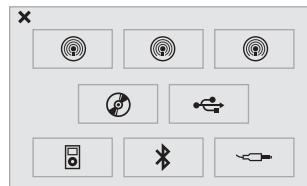
1

Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



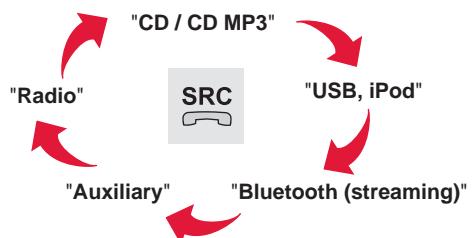
2

Select change of source then choose the source.



The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Press **OK** to confirm the selection.



# 04 MUSIC

## CD, MP3 CD / USB player

### Information and advice



The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.

WMA files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ü) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable not supplied.

Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (28-bit file allocation table).



The system does not support two identical devices connected at the same time (two memory sticks, two Apple® players) but it is possible to connect one memory stick and one Apple® player at the same time.



It is recommended that genuine Apple® USB cables are used to ensure correct operation.

## 04 MUSIC

### Selecting a track to play

|                  |   |   |
|------------------|---|---|
| Previous track.  |  /   |    |
| Next track.      |  /   |   |
| Previous folder. |    |    |
| Next folder.     |    |    |

# 04 MUSIC

## Connecting APPLE® players

1

Connect the Apple® player to one of the USB ports using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.



2

Control is via the audio system.

i

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

i

Copies of photos and album artwork are not compatible with the audio system. These appear only with a USB memory stick.

!

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Audio streaming

!

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played via the vehicle's speakers.

1

Connect the telephone: see the "Telephone" section, then "Bluetooth".

Choose the "Audio" or "All" profile.

2

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

!

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

It is recommended that you activate "Repeat" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

## 04 MUSIC

### Using the auxiliary input (AUX) (cable not supplied)

1

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary JACK socket using an audio cable.



2

Select **Media** to display the primary page.



3

Select change the source.



4

Select the **AUXILIARY** source.



i

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.  
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

# 04 MUSIC

## Managing the Jukebox

1

Connect the device (MP3 player...) to the USB port or auxiliary JACK socket using a suitable audio cable.

i

When no audio file is copied to the system with a capacity of 8GB, all of the Jukebox function symbols are greyed and are not available.

2

Select "Media list".



3

Select copy "Copy Jukebox".



4

Select "Sort by folder" or "Sort by album".



5

Select the magnifying glass to enter the folder or album and select audio file by audio file.



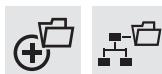
6

Select "Confirm" then "Copy".



7

Select "New folder" to create a folder structure in the Jukebox or select "Keep structure" to retain the structure from the device.



8

While copying the system returns to the primary page; you can go back to the copy view at any time by selecting this button.



# 05 NAVIGATION



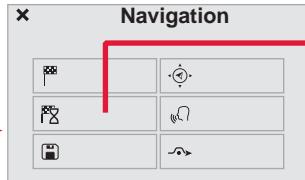
Level 1



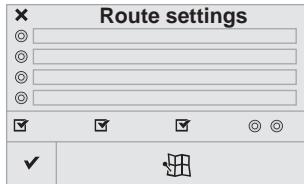
"Navigation"  
Primary page



Level 2

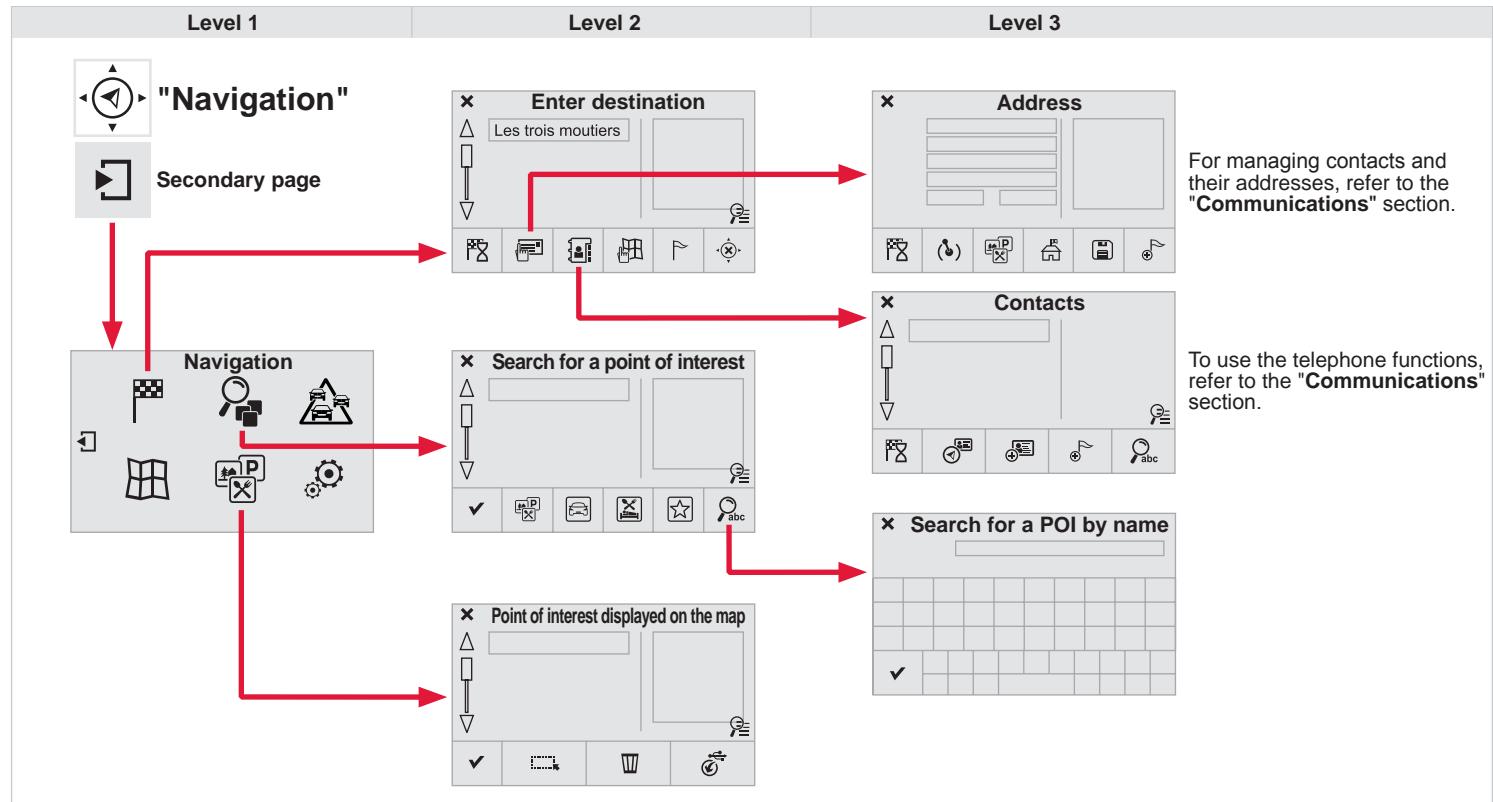


Level 3



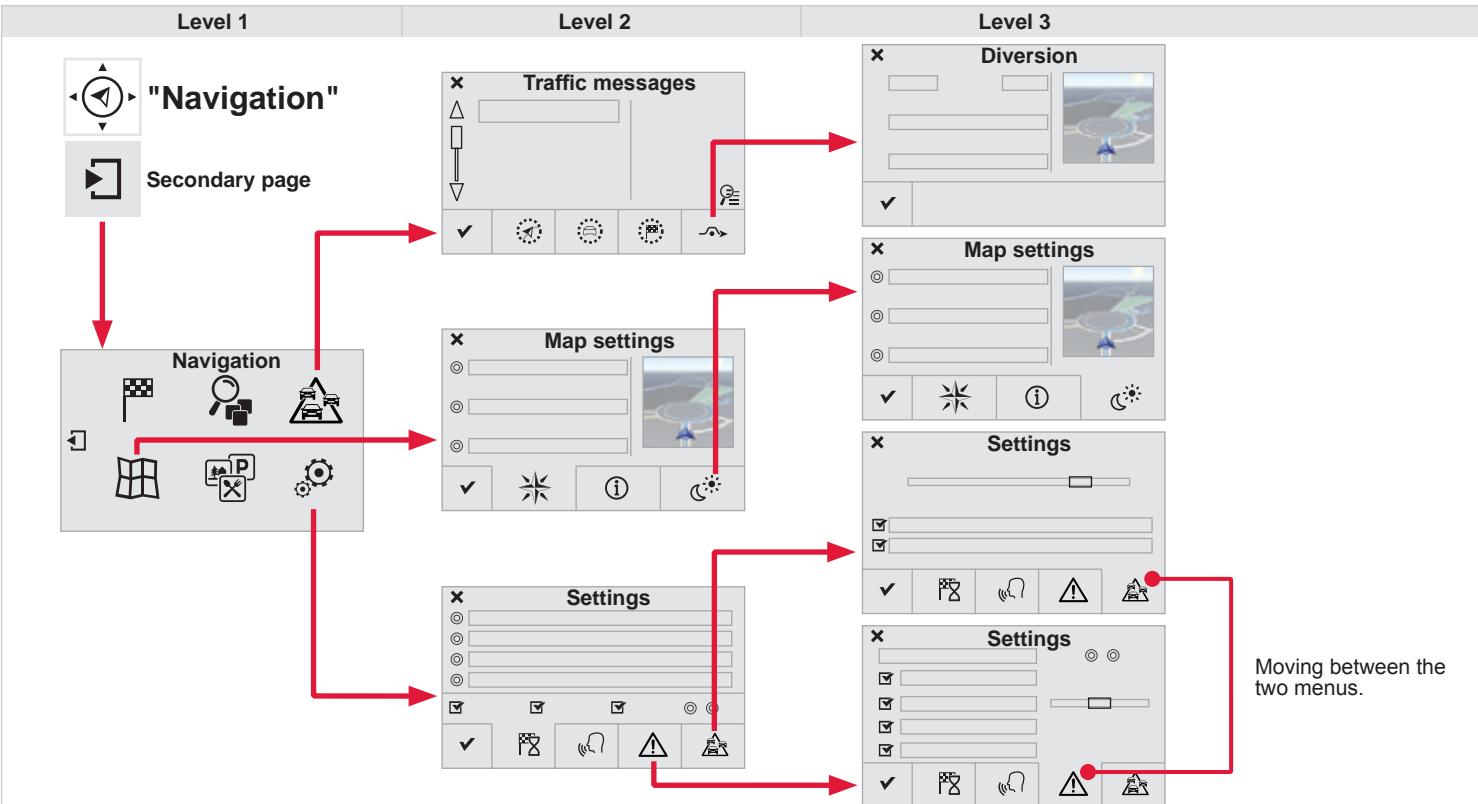
| Level 1  |  | Level 2   |   | Level 3 |  | Comments                              |   |  |  |
|--|--|---|---|---------|--|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| <br><br><br><b>Navigation</b><br>↓<br><b>Settings</b><br><b>Navigation</b><br>→ | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br> | <br><b>Enter destination</b> |   |         |  |                                       | Display recent destinations.                                  |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input type="radio"/> Fastest   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input type="radio"/> Shortest  |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input type="radio"/> Time/distance   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input type="radio"/> Ecological  |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tolls   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ferries   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   | <input type="checkbox"/> Strict - Close   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |  Show route on map |         |  | Display the map and start navigation. |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |  Confirm           |         |  | Save the options.                     |   |  |  |
|  |  |  Save                        |   |         |  |                                       | Save the current address.                                     |  |  |
|  |  |  Stop navigation             |   |         |  |                                       | Delete the navigation information.                            |  |  |
|  |  |  Voice                       |   |         |  |                                       | Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names. |  |  |
|  |  |  Diversion                   |   |         |  |                                       | Detour from your initial route by a certain distance.         |  |  |
| <br><b>Navigation</b>   | <br><br><br><br>  |   |   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |
|  |  |   |   |         |  |                                       |   |  |  |

## 05 NAVIGATION



| Level 1  | Level 2   | Level 3   | Comments   |
|--|---|---|--|
|  | <p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Secondary page</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Enter destination</b> →</p> |  <b>Address</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Curr. location</li> <li> Points of Interest</li> <li> Town centre</li> <li> Save</li> <li> Add waypoint</li> <li> Navigate to</li> </ul> | <p>Address settings.</p> <p>Save the current address.</p> <p>Add a waypoint to the route.</p> <p>Press to calculate the route.</p> |
|  |   |  <b>Contacts</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Addresses</li> <li> Add contact</li> <li> Add waypoint</li> <li> Search for contact</li> <li> Navigate to</li> </ul>   | <p>Select a contact then calculate the route.</p>  |
|  | <p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Secondary page</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Search for POI</b> →</p>    |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> All POIs</li> <li> Garage</li> <li> Dining/hotels</li> <li> Personal</li> <li> By name</li> <li> Search</li> </ul>                                      | <p>List of categories available.</p> <p>After choosing the category, select the points of interest.</p>                            |
|  | <p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Secondary page</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Show POIs</b></p>           |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> Select all</li> <li> Delete</li> <li> Import POIs</li> <li> Confirm</li> </ul>   | <p>Choose the display settings for POIs.</p> <p>Save the options.</p>  |

# 05 NAVIGATION



| Level 1  |   | Level 2   |   | Level 3 |  | Comments  |  |
|--|---|---|---|---------|--|---|--|
| <br><br> | <p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Secondary page</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Traffic messages</b></p> <p>→</p> |  <b>On the route</b>     |   |         |  | <p>Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.</p>                           |  |
|  |   |  <b>Around vehicle</b>   |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |  <b>Near destination</b> |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |  <b>Detour</b>           | <input type="radio"/> Detour over a distance    |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Recalculate route         |         |  |   |  |
|  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Finish</b>   |   |         |  | <p>Save the options.</p>  |  |
| <br><br> | <p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Secondary page</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Map settings</b></p> <p>→</p>     |  <b>Orientation</b>      | <input type="radio"/> Flat view north heading   |         |  | <p>Choose the display and orientation of the map.</p>                                       |  |
|  |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Flat view vehicle heading |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Perspective view          |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |  <b>Maps</b>             |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |  <b>Aspect</b>           | <input type="radio"/> "Day" map colour          |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |   | <input type="radio"/> "Night" map colour        |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Automatic day/night       |         |  |   |  |
|  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Confirm</b>  |   |         |  | <p>Save the settings.</p>   |  |
| <br><br> | <p><b>Navigation</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Secondary page</b></p> <p>↓</p> <p><b>Settings</b></p> <p>→</p>         |  <b>Route settings</b>   |   |         |  | <p>Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.</p> |  |
|  |   |  <b>Voice</b>            |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |  <b>Alert!</b>           |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |  <b>Traffic options</b>  |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Confirm</b>  |   |         |  |   |  |
|  |   |   |   |         |  | <p>Save the options.</p>  |  |

# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Choosing a new destination

### Towards a new destination

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



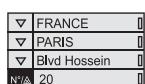
- 2 Select "**Enter destination**".



- 3 Select "**Address**".



- 4 Select the "**Country**:" from the list offered then in the same way: the "**City**:" or its post code, the "**Road**:", the "**N°**:". Confirm each time.



- 5 Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry. The system allows up to 200 entries.



- 5 Select "**Navigate to**".



- 6 Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/distance**" or "**Ecological**".



- 7 Choose the restriction criteria: "**Include tollroads**", "**Include ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



- 8 Select "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation guidance.



- i** To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**" then "**Stop navigation**".



- To restore the navigation information press on "**Settings**" then "**Resume navigation**".



# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Towards a recent destination

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



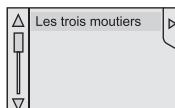
2

Select "Enter destination".



3

Select an address from the list offered.



4

Select "Navigate to".

Select the criteria then "Confirm" or press "Show route on map" to start guidance.



## Towards a contact

i

Navigation towards a contact imported from a telephone is only possible if the address entered is compatible with the system.

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "Enter destination".



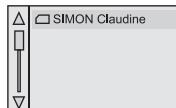
3

Select "Contacts".



4

Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.



5

Select "Navigate to".

Select the criteria then "Confirm" to start guidance.



# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Towards GPS coordinates

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**Enter destination**".



- 3 Select "**Address**".



- 4 Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".

6°54'689"

- 5 Select "**Navigate to**".  
Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start guidance.



## Towards a point on the map

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**Enter destination**".



- 3 Select "**From map**".



- 4 Zoom in on the map then select the point.



- 5 A long press displays the surrounding tourist attractions.

# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Towards points of interest (POI)

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Search for POI**".



3

Select "**All POIs**" or "**Garage**" or "**Dining/ hotels**" or "**Personal**" or "**By name**".



4

Select a category from the list offered.



5

Select "**Search**".



Points of Interest (POI) show all of the locations of services nearby (hotels, retail outlet, airports, ...).

6

Select a point of interest from the list offered.



7

Select "**Navigate to**".



i

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.  
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.  
The detailed procedure is available on:  
<http://citroen.navigation.com>.

# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Towards points of interest (POI)

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "Show POIs".



3

Select a category from the list offered then "Confirm".



# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Risk area / Danger zone alert settings

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Settings**".



3

Select "**Alert config.**".



4

It is then possible to activate Risk Areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk Area alert to be defined.

5

Select "**Confirm**".



These functions are only available if Risk Areas have been downloaded and installed on the system.

# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Adding a waypoint

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**Enter destination**".



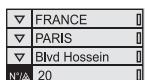
- 3 Select "**Itinerary**".



- 4 Select "**Add waypoint**" then "**Address**".



- 5 The address of the waypoint is entered in the same way as a destination, so enter the "**City**:" or post code, the "**Road**:" and the "**N°**:". Confirm each time.  
Then select "**Add waypoint**".

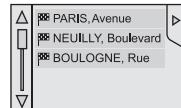


- 6 Select "**Navigate to**".  
Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start guidance and give the general direction of the navigation route.



## Organising waypoints

- 4 To organise waypoints, carry out the previous operations 1 to 3 again (Adding a waypoint).



- 5 Select the waypoint that you want to move in the order.

- 6a Select "**Up**".



- 6b Select "**Down**".



- 6c Select "**Delete**".



- Select "**Road map**" to view the changes made to the route.



# 05 NAVIGATION - GUIDANCE

## Route options

### Calculation criteria

1

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Settings**".



3

Select "**Criteria**".



4

It is then possible to choose:

- the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**", "**Shortest**", "**Time/distance**", "**Ecological**".
- the exclusion criteria: "**Include tollroads**", "**Include ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".

5

Select "**Confirm**".



!

The ecological calculation is based on mapping data but this may not always be correct.

# 05 TRAFFIC

## Traffic information

### Display of messages

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



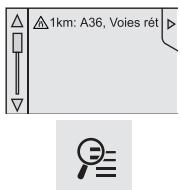
- 2 Select "Traffic messages".



- 3 Set the "**On the route**", "**Around**", "**Near destination**" filters to fine-tune the list.  
Press again to remove the filter.



- 4 Select the message from the list offered.  
Select the magnifying glasses to have the information spoken.



- i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

### Setting filters

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "Settings".



- 3 Select "Info option".



- 4 Select:
  - "Warn of new messages"**,
  - "Speak messages"**.Then enter the filter radius.



- 5 Select "Confirm".



- i** We recommend a filter radius of:
  - 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
  - 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

# 05 TRAFFIC

## Main traffic symbols

- 1 Red and yellow triangle: traffic information, for example:



Modified signs



Slippery surface



Delay



Risk of explosion



Demonstration



No entry



Narrow carriageway



Accident



Roadworks



Road closed



Danger



Traffic jam

- 2 Black and blue triangle: general information, for example:



Weather reports



Traffic reports



Wind



Fog



Parking



Snow / ice

## Receiving TA messages

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**Settings**".



- 3 Select "**Voice**".



- 4 Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".



**i** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

# 05 TRAFFIC

## Diverting from a route

- 1 Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**Traffic messages**".



- 3 Select "**Diversion**".



- 4 Select the diversion distance by pressing + or -.



- 5 Select "**Recalculate route**". The route will be modified in time and distance.

+183 km +00:20

- 6 Select "**Confirm**".



- The route may be diverted following the reception of a traffic information message.

# 05 MAP

## Map settings

### Map orientation

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Map settings**".



3

Select "**Orientation**".



4

Select:

- "**Flat view north heading**" to keep the map always North up,
- "**Flat view vehicle heading**" to have the map follow the direction of travel,
- "**Perspective view**" to display a perspective view.



5

Select "**Confirm**" to save the modifications.



# 05 MAP

## Configure

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Map settings**".



3

Select "**Aspect**".



4

Select:

- "**Day**" map colour to have the map always in day mode.
- "**Night**" map colour to have the map always in night mode.
- "**Automatic day/night**" to have the brightness of the map adjusted automatically according to the ambient light level.

This mode makes use of the vehicle's sunshine sensor or by manual operation of the vehicle's lighting.



5

Then "**Confirm**" to save the modifications.



Street names are visible on the map from the 100 m scale.

# 05 SETTINGS

## Navigation speech synthesis

### Volume / Street names

1

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Settings**".



3

Select "**Voice**".



4

Select "**Voice synthesis**" and/or "**Male voice**" and/or "**Female voice**" and/or "**Speak road names**".



5

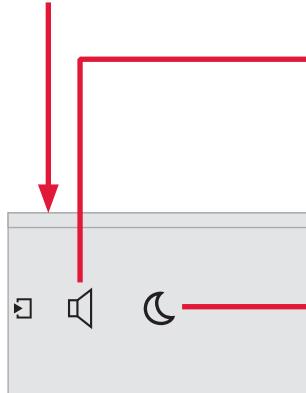
Select "**Confirm**" to save the modifications.



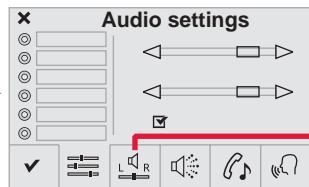
# 06 CONFIGURATION



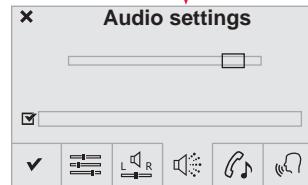
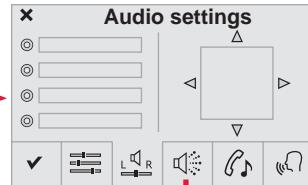
Level 1



Level 2

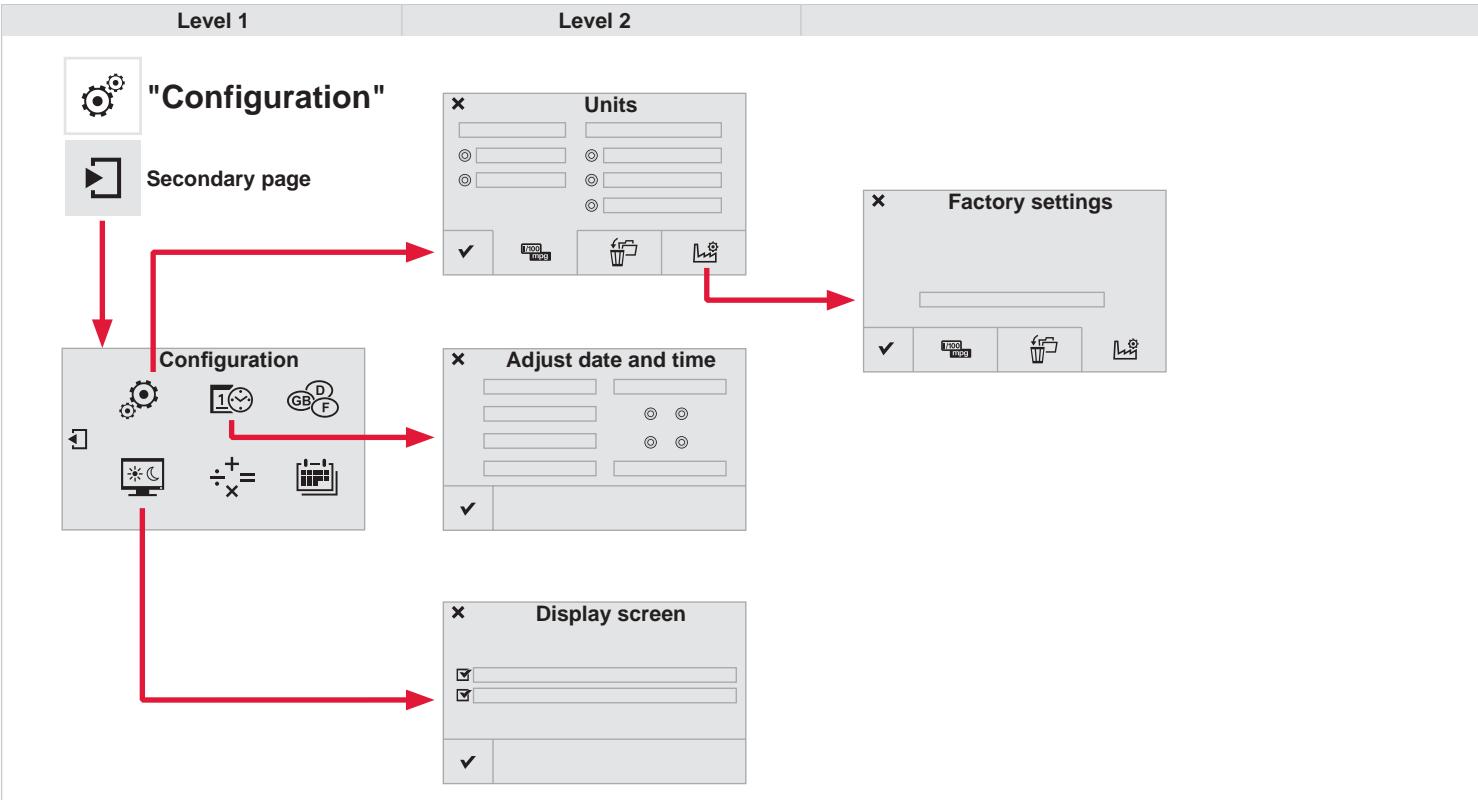


Level 3



| Level 1   | Level 2  | Level 3 | Comments   |
|---|--|---------|--|
|  <b>Configuration</b><br> <b>Audio settings</b><br>  |  <b>Ambience</b>      |         | Choose the sound ambience.   |
|   |  <b>Balance</b>       |         | Set the position of the sound in the vehicle using the Arkamys® system.                |
|   |  <b>Sound effects</b> |         | Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.                                  |
|   |  <b>Ringtones</b>     |         | Set the telephone ringtone and volume.   |
|   |  <b>Voice</b>         |         | Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.                                    |
|   |  <b>Confirm</b>       |         | Save the settings.   |
|  <b>Configuration</b><br> <b>Turn off screen</b><br> |                       |         | Turn off the display (black screen). A press on the black screen restores the display. |

# 06 CONFIGURATION



| Level 1  | Level 2   | Comments  |
|--|---|---|
|  Configuration<br> Secondary page<br> System Settings → |  Units<br> Delete data<br> Factory settings<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm | <p>Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.</p> <p>Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.</p> <p>Return to factory settings.</p> <p>Save the settings.</p> |
|  Configuration<br> Secondary page<br> Time/Date →       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm   | <p>Set the date and time then confirm.</p>  |
|  Configuration<br> Secondary page<br> Screen settings → | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Automatic text scrolling<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deactivate animations<br><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Confirm  | <p>Make the setting then confirm.</p>   |

# 06 CONFIGURATION



Level 1

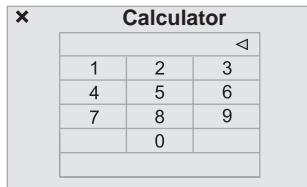
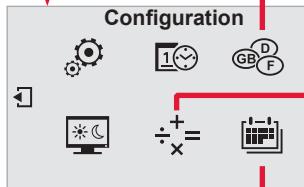
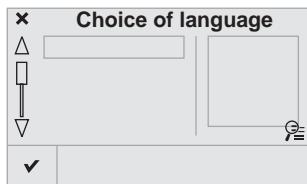


"Configuration"



Secondary page

Level 2



| Level 1  | Level 2  | Comments                                 |
|--|--|--|
| <br><br> | <p>Configuration<br/>↓<br/>Secondary page<br/>↓<br/>Languages<br/>→</p> <p>✓ Confirm</p> | <p>Select the language then confirm.</p> |
| <br><br> | <p>Configuration<br/>↓<br/>Secondary page<br/>↓<br/>Calculator<br/>→</p>                 | <p>Select the calculator.</p>            |
| <br><br> | <p>Configuration<br/>↓<br/>Secondary page<br/>↓<br/>Calendar<br/>→</p>                   | <p>Select the calendar.</p>              |

# 06 CONFIGURATION

## Audio settings

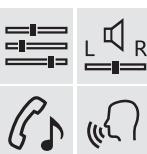
- 1 Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page.



- 2 Select "**Audio settings**".



- 3 Select "**Ambience**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound effects**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Voice**".



- ! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of listeners in the vehicle.  
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

- ! The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.  
The settings for distribution and balance are common to all sources.



- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiances)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Balance**" ("Driver", "All passengers", "Front only")
- "**Audio setting on touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to vehicle speed:**" (Activate/Deactivate)



On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging.  
With Sound Staging, the driver and passengers are immersed in an "audio scene" recreating the natural atmosphere of an auditorium: truly a part of the scene and its surroundings.

This new sensation is made possible by software in the audio system which processes the digital signals from the media players (radio, CD, MP3...) without changing the audio settings. This processing takes account of the characteristics of the passenger compartment to produce optimum results.

The Arkamys® software installed in your audio system processes the digital signal from the media players (radio, CD, MP3, ...) and recreates a natural musical scene, with harmonious placement of instruments and voices in the space in front of passengers, level with the windscreen.

# 06 CONFIGURATION

## System

### Modify system settings

- 1 Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**System Settings**".



- 3 Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



- 4 Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.  
Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



- 5 Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



- 1 Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select "**Screen settings**".



- 3 Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".

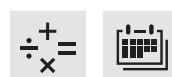


- 1 Press on **Configuration** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 2 Select:

- "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, time and its format and then the date.
- "**Languages**" to change the language.
- "**Calculator**" to display a calculator
- "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.



# 07 CONNECTED SERVICES



Level 1

Level 2



## "Connected services"

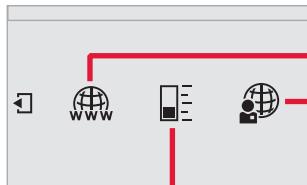
### Primary page

Driving assistance applications, see following page on "CITROËN MULTICITY CONNECT"\*\*.

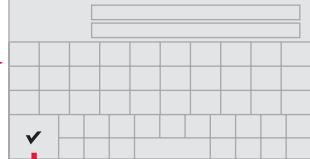


### Secondary page

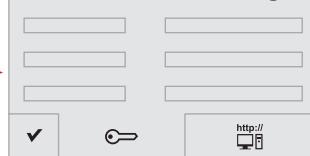
Internet navigation via Bluetooth telephone Dial-Up Networking (DUN).



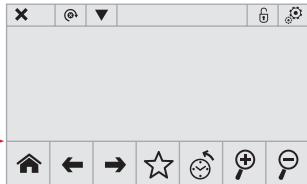
### Identification



### DUN connection settings



### Transfer rate



It may be that certain new generation smartphones are not compatible with this standard.

\* Depending on country.

# 07 CITROËN MULTICITY CONNECT

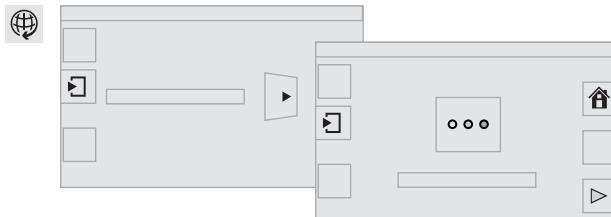


"CITROËN MULTICITY CONNECT" is a service providing driving aid applications in real time, that gives access to useful information such as the state of the traffic, danger zones, fuel prices, the availability of parking places, tourist sites, weather conditions, correct addresses... It includes access to the mobile network associated with the use of these applications. "CITROËN MULTICITY CONNECT" is a service available under subscription contract from CITROËN dealers, depending on country and the type of touch screen, both before and after delivery of a new vehicle.

- 1 Plug the "CITROËN MULTICITY CONNECT" connection key into the USB port.



- 2 Press the "Connected services" menu to display the applications.



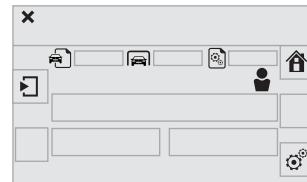
- 3



These applications use vehicle data such as the current speed, mileage, remaining fuel range or even GPS position to provide pertinent information.

- !

For safety reasons, some functions can only be used when stationary.



The "MyCITROËN" application is a link between the user, the manufacturer and its dealer network.

It allows the customer to know everything about their vehicle: servicing plan, accessory range, service contracts taken out, ...

It also makes possible the sending of the vehicle's mileage to the "MyCITROËN" site, or to identify a dealer.

# 08 TELEPHONE

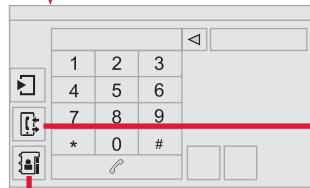


Level 1

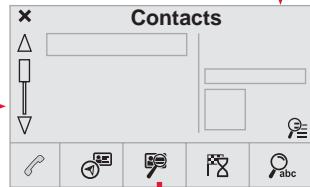
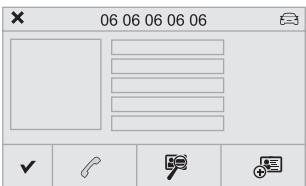
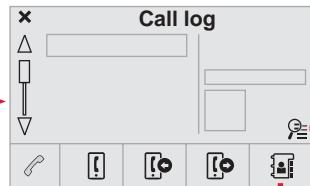


"Telephone"

Primary page



Level 2



Level 3

| Level 1  | Level 2  | Level 3  | Comments                              |
|--|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| <br> <p>Telephone<br/>↓<br/>Call log →</p> |  All calls          |  |                                       |
|  |  Incoming calls     |  |                                       |
|  |  Outgoing calls     |  |                                       |
|  |  Contacts           |  |                                       |
|  |  Magnifying glass   |  View               |                                       |
|  |  |  Create             |                                       |
|  |  Call               |  |                                       |
| <br> <p>Telephone<br/>↓<br/>Contacts →</p> |  Addresses          |  |                                       |
|  |  View               |  New                |                                       |
|  |  |  Import             |                                       |
|  |  |  Delete             |                                       |
|  |  |  Delete all         |                                       |
|  |  |  Search for contact |                                       |
|  |  |  Confirm            |                                       |
|  |  Navigate to        |  |                                       |
|  |  Search for contact |  |                                       |
|  |  Call               |  |                                       |
|  |  |  | After making choices, start the call. |
|  |  |  | After making choices, start the call. |

# 08 TELEPHONE



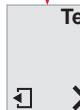
Level 1



"Telephone"



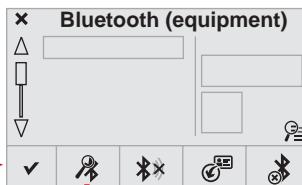
Secondary page



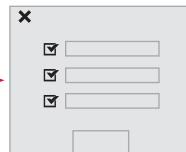
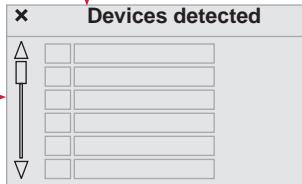
Telephone connection



Level 2



Level 3



| Level 1  |  | Level 2   | Level 3   | Comments   |
|--|--|---|---|--|
| <br><br><br> | <b>Telephone connection</b><br><br><b>Secondary page</b><br><br><b>Bluetooth Connection</b><br> |  <b>Search</b>       |   | Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.   |
|  |  |  <b>Disconnect</b>   |   | Stop the Bluetooth connection to the selected peripheral device.   |
|  |  |  <b>Update</b>       |   | Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.                           |
|  |  |  <b>Delete</b>       |   | Delete the selected telephone.   |
|  |  |  <b>Confirm</b>      |   | Save the settings.   |
| <br><br>  | <b>Telephone connection</b><br><br><b>Secondary page</b><br><br><b>Search for devices</b><br>   | <b>Devices detected</b>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Telephone       |  |
|  |  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Audio streaming | Start the search for peripheral devices.   |
|  |  |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Internet        |  |
| <br><br>  | <b>Telephone connection</b><br><br><b>Secondary page</b><br><br><b>Telephone Options</b><br>    |  <b>Put on hold</b>  |   | Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.           |
|  |  |  <b>Update</b>       |   | Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.                            |
|  |  |  <b>Ringtones</b>    |   | Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.  |
|  |  |  <b>Memory info.</b> |   | Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth contacts. |
|  |  |  <b>Confirm</b>      |   | Save the settings.   |

# 08 BLUETOOTH

## Pairing a Bluetooth telephone First connection

### Procedure (short) from the telephone

- 1 In the Bluetooth menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.



- 2 Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.



- 3 Enter this same code in the system, select "OK" and confirm.



### Procedure from the system

- 1 Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



- 2 Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



- 3 Select "**Bluetooth Connection**".



For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

- 4 Select **Search**.

The list of telephones detected is displayed.



- 5 If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth function on your telephone off and then on again.



- 6 Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and **Confirm**.

- 7 Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".



- 8 Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.



The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth standard).

Select one or more profiles and **Confirm**.

# 08 BLUETOOTH



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.



The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The two profiles may both connect by default.



Visit [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk) for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The telephone is added to the list.



Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.



Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

If not, select "Update".



On return to the vehicle, the last telephone connected automatically reconnects, within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

## Connecting a Bluetooth peripheral

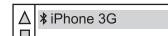
### Automatic reconnection



On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.



The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.



### Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.



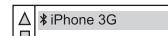
Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search**".



The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.



# 08 BLUETOOTH

## Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

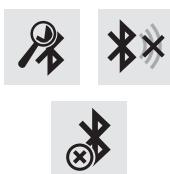


Select the peripheral in the list.



Select:

- "**Search**" or "**Disconnect**" to connect or disconnect the Bluetooth connection with the peripheral selected.
- "**Delete**" to remove the pairing.



## Receiving a call



An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.



or  
Select "**End call**".



# 08 CONTACTS

## Making a call

### Calling a new number

- 1 Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



- 2 Enter the phone number using the keypad then "Call" to start the call.



! Use of the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
We recommend that you park safely or make use of the steering mounted controls.

### Calling a contact

- 1 Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



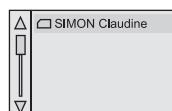
Or make a long press on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



- 2 Select "Contacts".



- 3 Select the desired contact from the list offered.



- 4 Select "Call".



# 08 CALL LOG

## Calling a recently used number

1

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



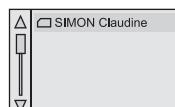
2

Select "**Call log**".



3

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



i

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

## Ending a call

1a

Select "**End call**".



or

1b

Make a long press on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



# 08 SETTINGS

## Ringtones

1

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page then go to the secondary page.



2

Select "**Telephone Options**".



3

Select "**Ringtones**".



4

You can select the ringtone used and adjust its volume.

5

Select "**Confirm**".



## Managing contacts / Entries

1

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



2

Select "**Contacts**".



3

Select "**Add contact**".



4

Select:

- "**New**" to add a new contact.
- "**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.
- "**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.
- "**Delete all**" to delete all of the information for the selected contact.



5

Select "**Directory information**" for the number of entries used, available, ...



# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION  |
|---|---|---|
| <b>Navigation, guidance</b>   |   |   |
| The route calculation is not successful.                              | The guidance criteria may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).  | Check the guidance criteria on the Navigation Menu, "Guidance options"\ "Define calculation criteria".  |
| I am unable to enter my post code.                                    | The system only accepts post codes of up to 5 characters.   |   |
| The POIs do not appear.   | The POIs have not been selected.  | Select the POIs in the list of POIs.  |
| The risk areas audible warning does not work.                         | The audible warning is not active.  | Activate audible warnings in the Guidance options menu, "Navigation - guidance", "Set parameters for risk areas".   |
| The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route. | The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.  | Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of guidance criteria.  |
| I receive a Risk area alert which is not on my route.                 | Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Risk area located on nearby or parallel roads. | Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than guidance or to reduce the time for the announcement. |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION   |
|---|---|--|
| Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.  | On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.                               | Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).  |
|   | The filters are too restrictive.  | Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.   |
|   | In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.                                | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.   |
| The altitude is not displayed.  | On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.              | Wait until the system has started up completely. Check that there is a GPS coverage of at least 4 satellites (long press on the SETUP button, then select "GPS coverage").                 |
|   | Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary. | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.   |
| <b>Telephone, Bluetooth</b>   |   |  |
| I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.                              | The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on.</li> <li>- Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".</li> </ul> |
|   | The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.  | You can check the compatibility of your telephone at <a href="http://www.citroen.co.uk/services">www.citroen.co.uk (services)</a> .  |
| The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible. | The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.   | Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.  |
|   | The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.   | Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).  |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION  |
|---|---|---|
| Some contacts are duplicated in the list.   | The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.  | Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".   |
| Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.   | Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.   | Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.  |
| The system does not receive SMS text messages.  | The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.   |   |
| <b>CD, MP3</b>  |   |   |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.                                     | <p>The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.</p> <p>The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf,...).</p> <p>The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section.</li> <li>- The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.</li> </ul> |
| There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick. | When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.   | This phenomenon is normal.  |
| The CD player sound is poor.  | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.  | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.  |
|   | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.  | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.   |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

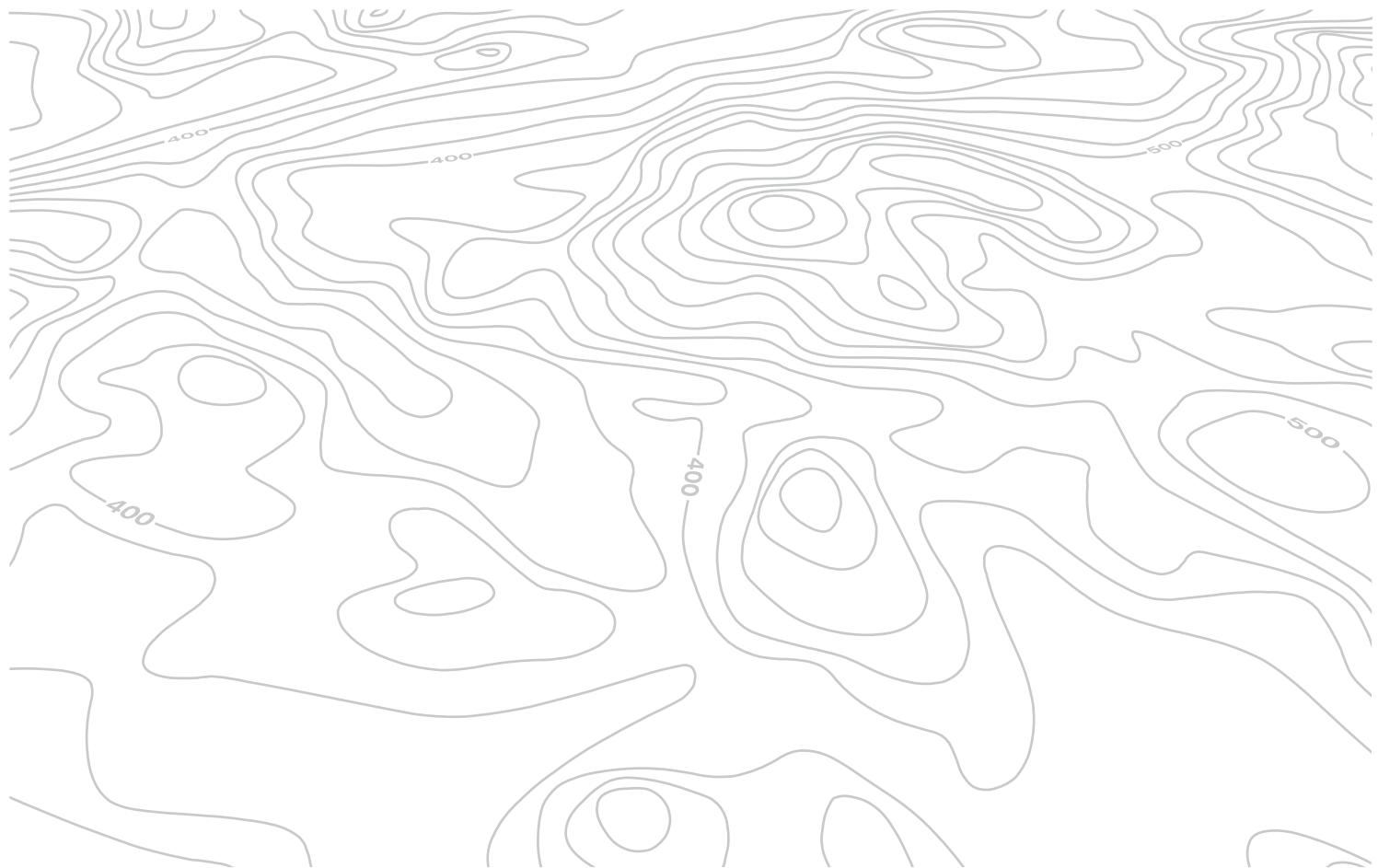
| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|---|--|---|
| Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.   | The audio system does not display some types of characters.  | Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.   |
| Playing of streaming files does not start.  | The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.   | Start the playback from the device.   |
| The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.  | The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.   |   |
| Radio   |  |   |
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling. | Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|   | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.   | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.  |
|   | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).  | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.  |
| I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.   | The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.   |   |
|   | Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).   |   |
| The name of the radio station changes.  | The system interprets this information as the name of the station.   |   |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|--|--|--|
| <b>Settings, configuration</b>   |  |  |
| In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.            | The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.   | Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.   |
| In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.                         |  |  |
| When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.                | The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.   | Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.  |
| When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.                  |  |  |
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...). | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...). | Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "None", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode. |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION   | ANSWER  | SOLUTION   |
|--|---|--|
| With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.   | <p>When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the battery charge.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.</p>                     | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.   |
| <b>USB, portable player, connection key</b>  |   |  |
| Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).                      | Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).  | Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick. |
| When I connect my iPhone as telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files. | When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players. | Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).                                     |





# Audio system / Bluetooth®



The system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.



For safety reasons, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary.

When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

## CONTENTS

|                                   |                                  |               |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>01</b>                         | <b>First steps</b>               | <b>p. 360</b> |
| <b>02</b>                         | <b>Steering mounted controls</b> | <b>p. 361</b> |
| <b>03</b>                         | <b>Main menu</b>                 | <b>p. 362</b> |
| <b>04</b>                         | <b>Audio</b>                     | <b>p. 363</b> |
| <b>05</b>                         | <b>Using the telephone</b>       | <b>p. 375</b> |
| <b>06</b>                         | <b>Audio settings</b>            | <b>p. 383</b> |
| <b>07</b>                         | <b>Screen menu map(s)</b>        | <b>p. 385</b> |
| <b>Frequently asked questions</b> |                                  | <b>p. 388</b> |

# 01 FIRST STEPS

Select screen display between modes:

Full screen: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) /

In a window: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) - Time or Trip computer.

Long press: black screen (DARK).

Select preset radio station.  
Long press: store a station.

On / Off.

Volume adjustment.

Display the list of stations received, CD/MP3 tracks or folders.  
Long press: managing the classification of MP3/WMA files / update the list of stations received.

Manual step by step search up / down for radio frequencies.  
Select previous / next MP3 folder.  
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist in the USB device.  
Navigation in a list.

Automatic search up / down for radio frequencies.  
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.  
Navigation in a list.



TA (Traffic Announcement) function On / Off.  
Long press: access to type of information.

Audio settings: audio ambiances, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume.

Select source: Radio, CD, AUX, USB, Streaming.  
Accept an incoming call.

Abandon the current operation.  
Up one level (menu or folder).

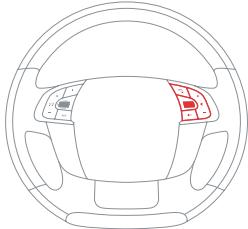
Selection of FM / DAB / AM\* wavebands.

Access to main menu.

\* Depending on model.

## 02 STEERING MOUNTED CONTROLS

### Audio system



- Short press: mute: change multimedia source.
- Long press: mute / restore sound.



- Rotation:  
Radio: automatic search for the previous / next station.  
Media: previous / next track.
- Press: confirmation.

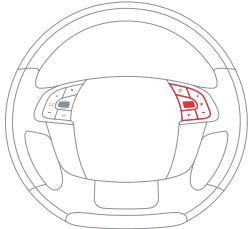


- Short press:  
Radio: display the list of stations.  
Media: display the list of tracks.
- Long press: update the list of stations received.



- Increase volume.
- Decrease volume.

### Audio / Bluetooth telephone system



- Short press:  
Change multimedia source.  
Accept an incoming call.  
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
- Long press:  
Reject an incoming call.  
End a call in progress.  
No call in progress: access to the telephone menu (Call, Contacts, call log, Voice mail).



- Rotation:  
Radio: automatic search for the previous / next station.  
Media: previous / next track.
- Press: confirmation.



- Short press:  
Radio: display the list of stations.  
Media: display the list of tracks.
- Long press: update the list of stations received.



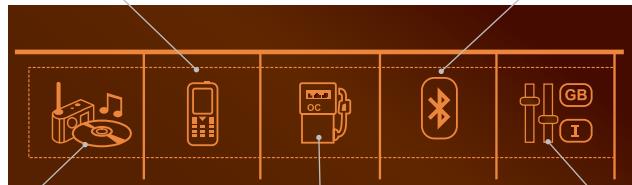
- Increase volume.
- Decrease volume.

## 03 MAIN MENU

Screen C

**"Telephone"**: Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

**"Bluetooth connection"**: Connections management, Search for a device.



**"Multimedia"**: Media parameters, Radio parameters.

**"Trip computer"**: Warning log.

**"Personalisation-configuration"**: Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

Screen A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to "Screen menu map" section.

# 04 AUDIO

## Radio

### Selecting a station

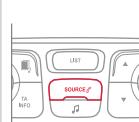


The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

1



Press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select radio.



2

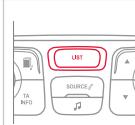


Press **BAND** to select a waveband.



LIST

Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.



Select the desired radio station and confirm by pressing **OK**.



A press changes to the next or previous letter (e.g. A, B, D, F, G, J, K, ...).



1



A long press on **LIST** builds or updates the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.



# 04 AUDIO

## RDS

**i** RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

- 1 When the radio is displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.



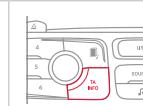
- 2 Select "RDS" and confirm to save. "RDS" is displayed in the screen.



## Receiving TA messages

**i** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

- 1 Press **TA INFO** to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.



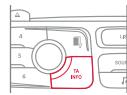
## Receiving INFO messages



The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.



- 1 Make a long press on **TA INFO** to display the list of categories.



- 2 Select or deselect categories to activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.



# 04 AUDIO

## Display RADIO TEXT



Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

Screen C

1



With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

2



Select "RadioText (TXT) display" and confirm **OK** to save.

Screen A

3



Select "MEDIA" and confirm.



Then select "TEXT INFO" and press **◀** or **▶** to select "ON" or "OFF" and confirm to save the modifications.

## 04 AUDIO

Display options:  
if active but not available, the display will  
be struck out.



If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.



Represents the signal strength for  
the band being listened to.

Display the name of the current  
station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.  
Short press: select the preset radio  
station.  
Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name of the multiplex  
service being used.

Display of RadioText (TXT) for the  
current radio station.

# 04 AUDIO

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) Digital radio



Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).  
The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.



Change band (FM1, FM2, DAB, ...)



Change of station within the same "multiplex service".



Start a search for the next "multiplex service".



Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).



When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "OK" to display the contextual menu.  
(Frequency hopping (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

## Digital radio - DAB / FM tracking



"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.  
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if it exists).



Press the "Menu" button.



Select "Multimedia" and confirm.



Select "DAB / FM auto tracking" and confirm



If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.  
When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".



If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("DAB/ FM" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

# 04 AUDIO

## Audio CD

### Playing a CD



Insert 12 cm diameter circular compact discs only.

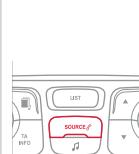
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.

Without pressing the **EJECT** button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

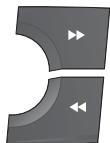
1



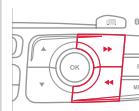
To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "CD".



2

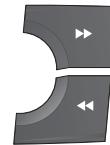


Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

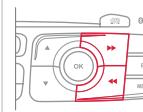
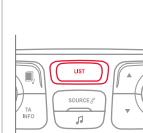


Press **LIST** to display the list of tracks on the CD.

3



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.



# 04 AUDIO

## CD, USB

### Information and advice



The audio system will only play files with extension ".mp3" or ".wma" and a compression rate that is constant or variable between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.



It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ü) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.



The playlists accepted are types .m3u and .pls.  
The number of files is limited to 5 000 in 500 directories on a maximum of 8 levels.



On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD. During play, the folder structure is not observed.



In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet. If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly. It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality. In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.



Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port. This may cause damage to your installation.

# 04 AUDIO

## CD, USB

### Playing a compilation



Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player or connect a memory stick to the USB port, directly or via an extension lead.



The system creates playlists (temporary memory) the creation time for which can take from a few seconds to several minutes.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.

Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

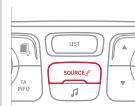
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).



At a first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the order previously chosen is retained.



To play a disc or memory stick which has already been inserted, press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select "CD" or "USB".



Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous track.



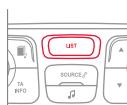
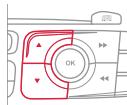
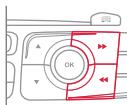
Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or backwards.



Press **LIST** to display the menu of folders in the compilation.



# 04 AUDIO



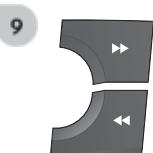
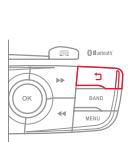
Select a line in the list.



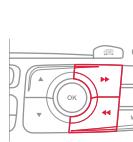
Select a track or a folder.



Up a level in the menu.



Skip a track.



## USB memory stick - File sorting



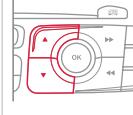
Make a long press on **LIST** or press **MENU**, select "Multimedia", then "Media parameters" and finally "Choice of track listing" to display the different types of sorting.



Having selected the desired sorting ("By folders", "By artists", "By genres", "By playlists") press **OK**.

Then confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

- **By folders:** all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- **By artists:** all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- **By genres:** all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- **By playlists:** if playlists have been saved.



## 04 AUDIO

### APPLE® players or portable player



The audio files on a Mass Storage portable player\* can be heard through the vehicle's speakers by connecting it to the USB port (cable not supplied).



Management of the device is via the audio system controls.



If the portable player is not recognised by the USB port, connect it to the auxiliary Jack socket.



The Apple® player must be updated regularly for the best connection.



The playlists are those defined in the Apple® player.



The Apple® player must be generation 5 or later.

\* Check your player's manual.

# 04 AUDIO

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)

### Auxiliary Jack socket



The auxiliary Jack socket permits the connection of a portable non-mass storage device or an Apple® player if not recognised by the USB port.



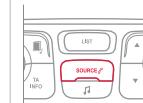
Do not connect a device to the USB port and to the auxiliary Jack socket at the same time.



1 Connect the portable device to the auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).



Press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "AUX".



First adjust the volume on your portable device.



Then adjust the volume of the audio system.



The display and management of controls is on the portable device.



# 04 AUDIO

## Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth



### Depending on the compatibility of the phone



Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.

The telephone must support the appropriate bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

1



Pair/connect the telephone: see the "USING THE TELEPHONE" section.

2



Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE** or **SRC**. Control of playback is via the audio system. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

!

In certain cases, playing of the audio files must be initiated from the telephone.

!

The audio quality depends on the quality of the transmission from the telephone.

## Play mode



The play modes available are:

- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

1



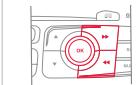
Press **OK** for access to the contextual menu.  
or  
Press  **MENU**.



2



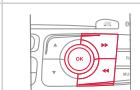
Select "Multimedia" and confirm.



3



Select "Media parameters" and confirm.



4



Select "Read mode" and confirm.



5



Select the desired play mode and confirm **OK** to save the modifications.



# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

## Pairing a telephone

### First connection



The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.



! For safety reasons and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on. Visit [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk) for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

1

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone user guide).



2

**MENU**

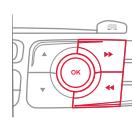
Press **MENU**.



3



Select "Bluetooth connection" and confirm.



4



Select "Search for a device".



5

A window is displayed "Search in progress...".

6



Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.



## 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

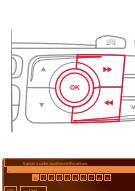


In some cases, the reference number of the telephone or the Bluetooth address may appear instead of the name of the telephone.

7



A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits and conform with **OK**.



8

A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.



If pairing fails, try again; the number of attempts is not limited.

9

Accept the connection to the telephone.

10

A message appears in the screen to confirm the result of the connection.

!

Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for detected Bluetooth devices.

!

The directory and the calls list can be accessed after the synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible). Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

### Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

1

Pair/connect the telephone then listen: see the AUDIO section.

# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

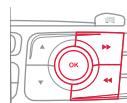
## Managing connections

- i** The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming. The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

**1**  
Press  **MENU**.



**2**  
Select "Bluetooth connection" and confirm.



**3**  
Select "Connections management" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
|  | Indicates that a device is connected.                |
|  | Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile. |
|  | Indicates connection of the hands-free profile.      |

**4**  
Select a telephone and confirm.



**5**  
Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free connection only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect only streaming.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.



# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

## Making a call - Dialling

- 1 To display the "TELEPHONE" menu:
  - Make a long press on **SOURCE** or **SRC**.
  - Or, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "Call" and confirm.
  - Or, press **MENU**, select "Telephone" and confirm. Select "Call" and confirm.



- 2 Select "Dial" to enter a number and confirm.



- 3 Select numbers one at a time using the **◀** and **▶** buttons and confirm.



**💡** Correction allows numbers to be deleted one at a time.

- 4 Select **OK** and confirm to start the call.



## Making a call - Recently called numbers\*

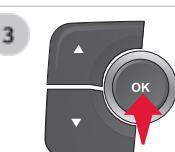
- 1 To display the "TELEPHONE" menu:
  - Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
  - Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "Call" and confirm.
  - Or, press **MENU**, select "Telephone" and confirm. Select "Call" and confirm.



- 2 Select "Calls list" and confirm.



- 3 Select the number and confirm to start the call.



**💡** The calls list includes calls sent and received in the vehicle using the connected telephone.

**❗** It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

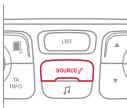
\* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

## Making a call - From the directory of contacts

1

- To display the "TELEPHONE" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
  - Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "Call" and confirm.
  - Or, press **MENU**, select "Telephone" and confirm. Select "Call" and confirm.



2

Select "Directory" and confirm.

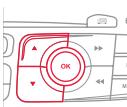


3

Select a contact then confirm.



- Home**
  - Business**
  - Mobile**
- (depending on the information available in the contact records of the telephone connected).



4

Select the number and confirm.



## Receiving a call

1

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the multifunction screen.

2

"YES" to accept the call is selected by default.

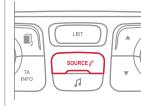
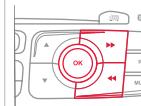
Press **OK** to accept the call.  
Select "NO" and confirm to reject the call.

or

Press one of these buttons to accept the call.



A long press on **ESC** or on **TEL**, **SOURCE** or **SRC** also rejects an incoming call.



# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

## Managing calls

1



During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.



**Hang up**

2a



In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.



A long press on one of these buttons also ends the call.



**Secret - Mute**

(so that the caller cannot hear)

2b



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.



# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

## Combined mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)

2c



- In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.
  - deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.



## Interactive voice response

2d



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.



## Consultation call



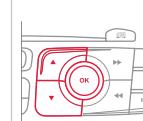
In certain cases, the combined mode has to be activated from the telephone.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

2e



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.



# 05 USING THE TELEPHONE

## Directory



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on compatibility, and while the Bluetooth connection with it is maintained.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.

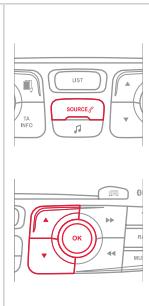


Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

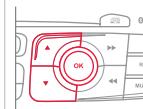
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.



Make a long press on **SOURCE** or **SRC** for access to the directory or press **OK**, and select "**Call**" and confirm.



Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.



To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.

Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.

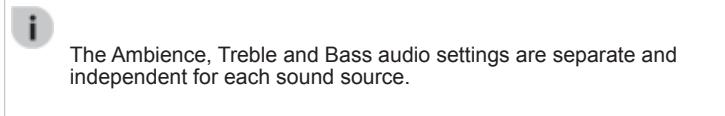
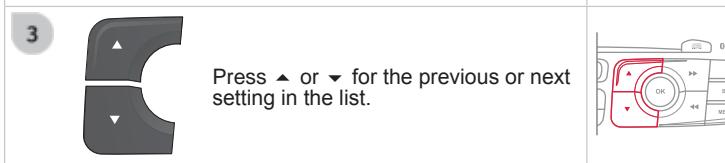
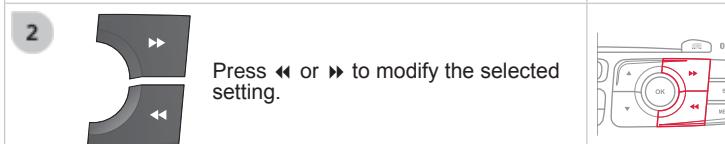
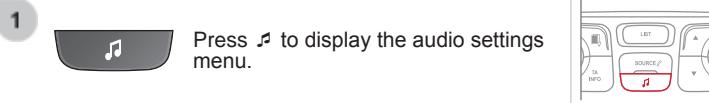
You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".



# 06 AUDIO SETTINGS

## Screen A



# 06 AUDIO SETTINGS

## Screen C



1  Press  to display the audio settings menu.

2 The settings available are:

- Ambience,
- Bass,
- Treble,
- Loudness,
- Distribution: Personalised or Driver,
- Left / right balance,
- Fader (front / rear balance),
- Auto. volume.

3

Select and confirm "Other settings..." to display the next setting in the list.

! The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system), is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

i The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

i On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging.  
With Sound Staging, the driver and passengers are immersed in an "audio scene" recreating the natural atmosphere of an auditorium: truly a part of the scene and its surroundings.

This new sensation is made possible by software in the audio system which processes the digital signals from the media players (radio, CD, MP3...) without changing the audio settings. This processing takes account of the characteristics of the passenger compartment to produce optimum results.

The Arkamys® software installed in your audio system processes the digital signal from the media players (radio, CD, MP3, ...) and recreates a natural musical scene, with harmonious placement of instruments and voices in the space in front of passengers, level with the windscreen.

# 07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

## Screen A



### MAIN FUNCTION

#### Option A

- 1 Option A1
- 2 Option A11

#### Option B...



### RADIO

- 1 RDS options
- 2 Infotext
- 2 Radiotext



### TRIP COMPUTER

- 1 Diagnostics



### DATE AND TIME



### MEDIA

- 1 Read mode
- 2 Normal
- 3 Random
- 3 Random all



### LANGUAGES



1 Français



2 Italiano



2 Nederlands



2 Portuguès



2 Portuguès-brasil



2 Deutsch



2 English



2 Espanol



2 Cestina



2 Hrvatski



2 Magyar



### VEHICLE PARAM\*

\* Depending on vehicle equipment.

# 07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

## Screen C

### MEDIA

#### 1 Media parameters

1 Choice of playback mode

2 Normal

3 Random

3 Random all

3 Repeat

2 Choice of track listing

3 By folders

3 By artists

3 By genres

3 By playlists

#### 1 Radio parameters

### TELEPHONE

#### 1 Call

1 Dial

2 Directory

2 Calls list

2 Voice mail box

#### 1 Directory management

1 Consult an entry

2 Delete an entry

2 Delete all entries

#### 1 Telephone management

2 Telephone status

#### 1 Hang up

### TRIP COMPUTER

#### 1 Vehicle diagnosis

### BLUETOOTH CONNECTION

#### 1 Connections management

#### 1 Search for a device

# 07 SCREEN MENU MAP(S)

## PERSONALISATION - CONFIGURATION

1 Define the vehicle  
parameters\*

1 Choice of language

1 Display configuration

2 Choice of units

2 Date and time adjustment

2 Display parameters

2 Brightness

1 Choice of sounds

\* Depending on vehicle equipment.

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|--|--|--|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).   | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...). | Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode. |
| When changing the settings for treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, treble and bass are reset to zero. | Choosing an ambience imposes settings for treble and bass. Modifying one without the other is not possible.  | Modify the treble and bass settings or the ambience setting to obtain the desired sound quality.   |
| When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected.   | Choosing a distribution setting imposes a balance setting. Modifying one without the other is not possible.  | Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.  |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|---|--|--|
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling. | Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|   | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.   | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.  |
|   | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).   | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.   |
| Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.   | During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.  | Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.                                    |
| The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.   | The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.  | Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.  |
| The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).   | An incorrect waveband is selected.   | Press the BAND button to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.  |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|---|--|---|
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player. | The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section.</li> <li>- The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.</li> </ul> |
| The CD player sound is poor.                                    | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.   | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.  |
|   | The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.  | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.   |
| I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.                  | It is possible that Bluetooth is switched off on the telephone or that the telephone has not been made not visible.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on.</li> <li>- Check in the telephone's settings that it is "Visible to all".</li> </ul>  |
|   | The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.   | You can check the compatibility of your telephone on <a href="http://www.citroen.co.uk/services">www.citroen.co.uk (services)</a>   |
| The Bluetooth connection is cut.                                | The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.   | Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.  |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION   |
|---|---|--|
| The message "USB peripheral error" or "Peripheral not recognised" is displayed in the screen. | The USB memory stick is not recognised.<br>The memory stick may be corrupt.                   | Reformat the memory stick (FAT32).   |
| A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.                          | Automatic connection overrides manual connection.   | Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.  |
| The Apple® player is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.                          | The Apple® player is of a generation that is not compatible with a USB connection.            | Connect the Apple® player to the AUX Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).  |
| The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.                    | Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system. | Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply.<br><b>Caution:</b> ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system). |
| When streaming, the sound cuts momentarily.   | Some telephones prioritise connection of the "hands-free" profile.                            | Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.   |
| In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.                                       | In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.                 |  |

# FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|--|--|--|
| With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use. | <p>When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the battery charge.</p> <p>The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.</p> | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.                 |
| The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.           | In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.                    | Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool. |

**C**

- Capacity, fuel tank ..... 208  
 CD ..... 306, 368  
 CD MP3 ..... 306, 369, 370  
 Central locking ..... 55, 60, 65  
 Centre console ..... 104  
 Changing a bulb ..... 242-250  
 Changing a fuse ..... 251-255  
 Changing a wheel ..... 234-240  
 Changing a wiper blade ..... 131, 261  
 Changing the date ..... 38, 43, 48  
 Changing the remote control battery ..... 58, 63, 64  
 Changing the time ..... 34, 38, 43, 48  
 Checking levels ..... 215-218  
 Checking the engine oil level ..... 29, 215  
 Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) ..... 233  
 Checks ..... 213-228  
 Child lock ..... 149  
 Children ..... 135-149, 157, 159  
 Child seats ..... 135-148  
 Child seats, conventional ..... 141  
 Child seats, ISOFIX ..... 145-147  
 CITROËN Localised Assistance Call ..... 288  
 CITROËN Localised Emergency Call ..... 288  
 CITROËN MULTICITY CONNECT ..... 341  
 Clock ..... 34  
 Closing the boot ..... 72-74  
 Closing the doors ..... 71  
 Cold climate screen ..... 262  
 Colour screen ..... 290, 291  
 Connectors, audio ..... 103, 306, 310, 371, 373

**A**

- ABS and EBFD systems ..... 151  
 Accessories ..... 273  
 Accessory position ..... 168  
 Accessory socket, 12V ..... 102, 105, 112, 115  
 Additive, AdBlue ..... 23, 221-228  
 Adjusting headlamps ..... 125  
 Adjusting head restraints ..... 93  
 Adjusting seat belt height ..... 154, 156  
 Adjusting the steering wheel ..... 100  
 Advice on driving ..... 162  
 Airbags ..... 22, 158  
 Airbags, curtain ..... 160, 161  
 Airbags, front ..... 159, 161  
 Airbags, lateral ..... 160, 161  
 Air conditioning ..... 10  
 Air conditioning, digital ..... 80, 81, 84  
 Air conditioning, manual ..... 80, 82  
 Air filter ..... 219  
 Air flow ..... 82, 86  
 Air vents ..... 79  
 Alarm ..... 67  
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ..... 151  
 Anti-pinch ..... 76, 78  
 Anti-theft ..... 169  
 Armrest, front ..... 107, 108  
 Armrest, rear ..... 112  
 Assistance call ..... 153, 287, 288  
 Audible warning ..... 150  
 Audio cable ..... 310, 372  
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) ..... 306, 309, 374, 376  
 Audio system ..... 37, 39, 359

**B**

- Battery ..... 219, 256-259  
 Battery, charging ..... 258, 259  
 Battery, remote control ..... 58, 63, 64  
 Black panel ..... 36  
 Blind spot sensors ..... 196  
 BlueHDi ..... 189, 221-228  
 Bluetooth (hands-free) ..... 346, 347, 375  
 Bluetooth (telephone) ..... 346, 347, 375  
 Bonnet ..... 212  
 Bonnet stay ..... 212  
 Boot ..... 72, 73  
 Boot lamp ..... 115, 134  
 Brake discs ..... 220  
 Brake lamps ..... 248  
 Brake pads ..... 220  
 Braking assistance system ..... 151

- 
- Coolant level ..... 217  
 Courtesy lamps ..... 124, 133  
 Courtesy mirror ..... 102  
 Cruise control ..... 199, 203  
 Cup holder ..... 104

**D**

- DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) ..... 304, 305, 366, 367  
 Date (setting) ..... 38, 43, 48  
 Daytime running lamps ..... 119, 242, 246  
 Deactivating the passenger airbag ..... 159  
 Defrosting ..... 89, 90  
 Diesel ..... 26  
 Diesel additive level ..... 218  
 Diesel engine pre-heat warning lamp ..... 26  
 Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) ..... 304, 305, 366, 367  
 Dimensions ..... 285  
 Dipped beam ..... 118, 242, 245  
 Dipstick ..... 29, 215  
 Directional lighting ..... 126, 127  
 Direction indicators ..... 122, 150, 242, 244, 248  
 Doors ..... 71  
 Doors emergency control ..... 57, 62  
 Door pockets ..... 101  
 Driving economically ..... 10  
 Driving positions (storing) ..... 95  
 Dynamic emergency braking ..... 174  
 Dynamic stability control (DSC) ..... 152

**E**

- EBA (Emergency braking assistance) ..... 151  
 Eco-driving ..... 10  
 Economy mode ..... 260  
 Electric window controls ..... 75  
 Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) ..... 151  
 Electronic engine immobiliser ..... 64, 169  
 Emergency boot release ..... 74  
 Emergency braking system ..... 151  
 Emergency call ..... 153, 287, 288  
 Emergency warning lamps ..... 150  
 Emissions control system, SCR ..... 24, 221  
 Energy economy mode ..... 260  
 Engine compartment ..... 213, 214  
 Engine compartment fusebox ..... 255  
 Engine, Diesel ..... 209, 211, 214, 279  
 Engine oil ..... 215  
 Engine oil level indicator ..... 29, 215  
 Engine, petrol ..... 209, 213, 275  
 Environment ..... 10, 64, 80, 90, 190, 218, 228  
 Equipment settings ..... 37, 39, 45

**F**

- Filling with fuel ..... 208-210  
 Fitting a wheel ..... 239  
 Fitting roof bars ..... 262  
 Fittings, boot ..... 113, 117  
 Fitting speakers ..... 272

**G**

- Fittings, rear ..... 112  
 Flashing indicators ..... 122, 150, 244, 247  
 Foglamps, front ..... 120, 127, 242, 247  
 Foglamps, rear ..... 120, 248  
 Frequency (radio) ..... 301, 303  
 Front seats ..... 91, 92, 95  
 Fuel ..... 209  
 Fuel consumption ..... 10  
 Fuel filler flap ..... 208, 210  
 Fuel gauge ..... 12-14, 208  
 Fuel tank ..... 208, 210  
 Fusebox, dashboard ..... 253  
 Fuses ..... 251

- 
- Gearbox, automatic ..... 183, 220, 258  
 Gearbox, electronic ..... 179, 192, 220, 258  
 Gearbox, manual ..... 178, 192, 220  
 Gear shift indicator ..... 189  
 Gear lever, automatic gearbox ..... 183  
 Gear lever, electronic gearbox ..... 179, 220  
 Gear lever, manual gearbox ..... 178  
 Glove box ..... 102  
 Grab handles ..... 101

**H**

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
| Halogen headlamps                           | 243           |
| Hands-free kit                              | 346, 347, 375 |
| Hazard warning lamps                        | 150           |
| Headlamp adjustment                         | 125           |
| Headlamps, directional                      | 125, 126, 242 |
| Headlamp wash                               | 130           |
| Head restraints, front                      | 93            |
| Head restraints, rear                       | 96            |
| Heated seats                                | 93            |
| Heating                                     | 81, 82, 84    |
| Height and reach adjustment, steering wheel | 100           |
| Hill start assist                           | 188           |
| Hooks                                       | 114           |

**I**

|                                       |                    |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Ignition on                           | 163, 168           |
| Indicator lamps, status               | 16-28              |
| Indicators, direction                 | 150, 242, 244      |
| Inflating accessories (using the kit) | 233                |
| Inflating tyres                       | 10, 286            |
| Inputs for audio system               | 103, 306, 310, 373 |
| Installing speakers                   | 272                |
| Instrument panel lighting             | 35                 |

**J**

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Jack              | 234                |
| Jack cable        | 310, 372           |
| JACK socket       | 103, 306, 310, 373 |
| Jukebox (playing) | 311                |

**J**

|                              |            |
|------------------------------|------------|
| Instrument panels            | 12-14      |
| Instrument panel screen      | 12-14, 189 |
| Intelligent Traction Control | 152        |
| Interior fittings            | 101, 102   |
| Interior mood lighting       | 134        |
| ISOFIX                       | 146        |
| ISOFIX mountings             | 144        |

|                         |       |
|-------------------------|-------|
| Key not recognised      | 167   |
| Key with remote control | 53-58 |

**L**

|                                      |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| Labels, identification               | 286       |
| Lamps, warning and indicator         | 16-28     |
| Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) | 195       |
| Level, AdBlue® additive              | 23, 226   |
| Level, brake fluid                   | 216       |
| Level, power steering fluid          | 216       |
| Levels and checks                    | 213-218   |
| Lighting bulbs (replacement)         | 242-250   |
| Lighting control stalk               | 118, 122  |
| Lighting dimmer                      | 12-14, 35 |
| Lighting, guide-me home              | 122, 124  |
| Lighting, interior                   | 133, 134  |
| Loading                              | 10, 262   |
| Load reduction mode                  | 260       |
| Load space cover                     | 117       |
| Locating your vehicle                | 56, 61    |
| Locking from the inside              | 65        |
| Locking the boot                     | 72        |
| Long objects, transporting           | 112       |
| Low fuel level                       | 20, 208   |
| Luggage retaining strap              | 113       |

**M**

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Main beam                                   | 118, 242, 245                               |
| Maintenance                                 | 10  |
| Map reading lamps                           | 133   |
| Markings, identification                    | 286   |
| Massage function                            | 94  |
| Mat   | 110   |
| Memorising a speed                          | 199   |
| Menu  | 294, 296, 298, 312, 314, 316, 332, 342, 344 |
| Menu, main                                  | 362   |
| Menus                                       |   |
| (Touch screen tablet)                       | 290   |
| Mirror, rear view                           | 100   |
| Mirrors, door                               | 98, 99, 196                                 |
| Misfuel prevention                          | 210   |
| Motorway function<br>(direction indicators) | 150   |
| Mountings for ISOFIX<br>seats               | 144   |
| MP3 CD                                      | 306, 369, 370                               |

**N**

|                    |     |
|--------------------|-----|
| Navigation         | 312 |
| Number plate lamps | 250 |

**O**

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| Oil change      | 215 |
| Oil consumption | 215 |

**Q**

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| Quickly detachable towball | 267 |
|----------------------------|-----|

**R**

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| Radio  | 300, 363 |
| Radio pre-equipment                              | 272      |
| RDS  | 303, 364 |
| Rear screen (demisting)                          | 90       |
| Recharging the battery                           | 258, 259 |
| Reduction of electrical load                     | 260      |
| Regeneration of the particle<br>emissions filter | 219      |
| Reinitialising the electric<br>windows           | 76       |
| Reinitialising the remote<br>control             | 58, 63   |
| Remote control                                   | 53-64    |
| Removable screen (snow shield)                   | 262      |
| Removing a wheel                                 | 237      |
| Removing the mat                                 | 110      |
| Repair kit, puncture                             | 229      |
| Replacing bulbs                                  | 242-250  |
| Replacing fuses                                  | 251-255  |
| Replacing the air filter                         | 219      |
| Replacing the oil filter                         | 219      |
| Replacing the passenger<br>compartment filter    | 219      |
| Replacing wiper blades                           | 131, 261 |
| Resetting the service indicator                  | 32       |
| Resetting the trip recorder                      | 33       |
| Rev counter                                      | 12-15    |

|                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Reversing lamps .....             | 248      |
| Risk areas (update).....          | 321      |
| Roof bars.....                    | 262      |
| Roof blind .....                  | 78       |
| Routine checks .....              | 219, 220 |
| Running out of fuel (Diesel)..... | 211      |

**S**

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Safety for children.....                              | 135-149, 157, 159                                    |
| Screen menu map.....                                  | 294, 296, 298, 312, 314, 316, 332, 342, 344, 385-387 |
| Screen, monochrome .....                              | 37, 39, 385  |
| Screen, multifunction<br>(with audio equipment) ..... | 37, 39, 362  |
| Screenwash, front.....                                | 130  |
| SCR (Selective Catalytic<br>Reduction) .....          | 221  |
| Seat adjustment.....                                  | 91, 92   |
| Seat belts .....                                      | 141, 154, 156, 157                                   |
| Seats, electric .....                                 | 92   |
| Seats, rear.....                                      | 96   |
| Serial number, vehicle .....                          | 286  |
| Service indicator .....                               | 30   |
| Service warning<br>lamp .....                         | 19   |
| Servicing .....                                       | 10   |
| Setting the clock .....                               | 34, 38, 43, 48                                       |
| Sidelamps .....                                       | 118, 122, 242, 246, 248                              |
| Side repeater .....                                   | 247  |

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Ski flap .....                            | 112                                 |
| Snow chains.....                          | 241                                 |
| Spare wheel .....                         | 235                                 |
| Speakers (fitting).....                   | 272                                 |
| Speed limiter .....                       | 199, 201                            |
| Speedometer .....                         | 12-14                               |
| Spotlamps, side .....                     | 124, 247                            |
| Starting the engine .....                 | 163                                 |
| Starting using another battery .....      | 257                                 |
| Steering mounted controls.....            | 293, 361                            |
| Stop & Start.....                         | 52, 85, 89, 192, 208, 212, 219, 256 |
| Storage.....                              | 101, 102, 104, 107, 108, 113        |
| Storage compartments .....                | 104                                 |
| Storage drawer .....                      | 111                                 |
| Storage net .....                         | 113                                 |
| Storing driving<br>positions.....         | 95                                  |
| Stowing rings .....                       | 113                                 |
| Sun visor .....                           | 102                                 |
| Switching off<br>the engine .....         | 163                                 |
| Synchronising the remote<br>control ..... | 58, 63                              |
| Synthesiser, voice .....                  | 331                                 |
| System settings .....                     | 339                                 |

|                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| Table of weights .....  | 277, 281 |
| Tables of engines ..... | 275, 279 |

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| Tables of fuses .....                           | 251          |
| Tank, AdBlue® additive .....                    | 221, 226     |
| Tank, fuel.....                                 | 210          |
| Technical data.....                             | 275-286      |
| Telephone .....                                 | 346-349, 351 |
| Temperature control for<br>heated seats .....   | 93           |
| Temporary puncture repair kit .....             | 229          |
| Ticket holder .....                             | 101          |
| TMC (Traffic info) .....                        | 326          |
| Tools .....                                     | 234          |
| Torch .....                                     | 115          |
| Total distance recorder .....                   | 33           |
| Touch screen.....                               | 44-48, 289   |
| Touch screen tablet<br>(Menus).....             | 44, 290      |
| Towbar .....                                    | 265          |
| Towbar with quickly detachable<br>towball ..... | 267          |
| Towed loads .....                               | 275, 279     |
| Towing another vehicle .....                    | 264          |
| Traction control (ASR) .....                    | 152          |
| Traffic information (TA) .....                  | 327, 364     |
| Traffic information (TMC) .....                 | 326          |
| Trailer .....                                   | 265          |
| Trajectory control systems .....                | 152          |
| Trip computer .....                             | 49-52        |
| Trip distance recorder .....                    | 33           |
| Tyre pressures .....                            | 286          |
| Tyres .....                                     | 10           |
| Tyre under-inflation<br>detection .....         | 190          |

## U

- Under floor storage ..... 116  
Under-inflation (detection) ..... 190  
Unlocking ..... 53, 59  
Unlocking from  
the inside ..... 65  
Update risk areas ..... 321  
Updating the date ..... 38, 43, 48  
Updating the time ..... 34, 38, 43, 48  
UREA ..... 221, 222  
USB ..... 103, 306, 371

## X

- Xenon headlamps ..... 242

## V

- Vehicle configuration ..... 37, 39  
Ventilation ..... 79-80

## W

- Warning lamps ..... 16-28  
Warning lamp, SCR emissions  
control system ..... 24  
Wash-wipe, rear ..... 132  
Weights ..... 277, 281  
Welcome lighting ..... 124





Labels are fitted in various areas of your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

**We draw your attention to the following points:**

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the new vehicle warranty.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Printed in the EU  
Anglais

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France

Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com)

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



15.C4.0040

Anglais

2015 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD

4Dconcept

Diadeis

Interak

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE



# Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:

- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display settings menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of alert messages,
- the display of the ambient temperature (a blue snowflake appears if there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it also allows:

- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.



**For reasons of safety, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention, with the vehicle stationary.**

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...). A light wipe is not enough.

The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.

This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.

Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.

Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen tablet.

## Principles

Press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.

Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



Use this button to go to the secondary page.



Use this button to return to the primary page.



After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.



Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to quit.

## Menus

Press one of the buttons on the control panel for direct access to a particular menu.

### Driving.



Gives access to the trip computer and, depending on version, allows settings to be adjusted for certain functions.

See the corresponding section.



### Navigation.

Depending on trim level or country of sale, navigation can be not available, an option or standard.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Radio Media.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Telephone.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Internet.

The connected services are accessible using the Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or MirrorLink™ connections. See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Settings.

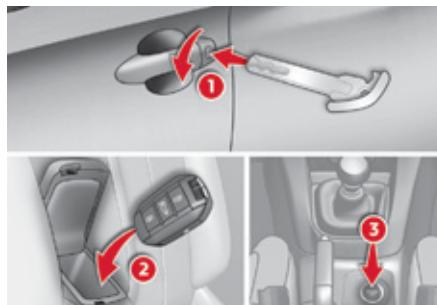
Allows configuration of the display and the system.

### 1. Volume / mute.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.

## Remote control problem / reinitialisation

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.



Place the back-up key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



- ☞ Open the front armrest.
  - Raise the mat by its tongue and remove it.
  - Place the electronic key on the back-up reader.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "START/STOP" button.

The electronic key is fully operational again.

Remember to refit the mat below the armrest after removing the reinitialised electronic key.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## 12 V accessory socket



- To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.



The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## USB Player



This connection box comprises a USB port and a Jack auxiliary socket.

### USB port

The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick. The USB player reads your audio files, which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers. The management of these files is from the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

**i** When connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the current delivered by the vehicle.

The USB also allows a telephone to be connected by a MirrorLink™ connection, so that use can be made in the touch screen tablet of certain applications on the telephone.

### Jack auxiliary socket

The Jack auxiliary socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player, so that your audio files can be heard through the vehicle's speakers. The management of these files is from the portable device.

For more information, refer to the corresponding part of the "Audio and telematics" section.

## ! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the following safety rules:

Sit in a normal upright position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

### Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.

Refer to the "Accessories" section.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

8

### Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

# Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently. Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

## Operation

### Going into engine STOP mode

- The "ECO" warning lamp comes on **ECO** in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:
- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi 115 and 120 Diesel versions, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,
  - **with an electronic gearbox**, at a speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), when you press the brake pedal or place the gear lever in position **N**.
  - **with an automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or place the gear lever in position **N**.



If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the "START/STOP" button.



With an electronic gearbox, for your comfort during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.



STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, for example. Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

### Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (up or down),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (using the key or the "START/STOP" button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



In this case, the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Going into engine START mode



The "ECO" warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an electronic gearbox**:
  - gear lever in position **A** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and the brake pedal released, when you place the gear lever in position **A** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.
- **with an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear lever in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear lever in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear lever in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

## Special cases: START invoked automatically

For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (3 km/h (2 mph) with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDI Diesel 115 and 120 versions), 7 mph (11 km/h) with an electronic gearbox or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.



With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.



In this case the "ECO" warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Deactivation

At any time, press the "ECO OFF" switch to deactivate the system.

This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by the display of a message.

- i** If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

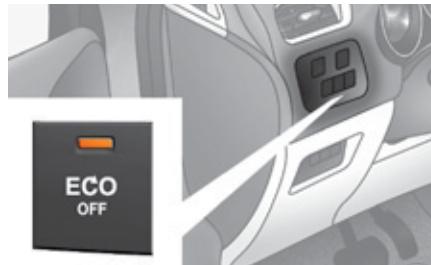
## Reactivation

Press the "ECO OFF" switch again.

The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and the display of a message.

- i** The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

## Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction with the system, the "ECO OFF" switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on continuously.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

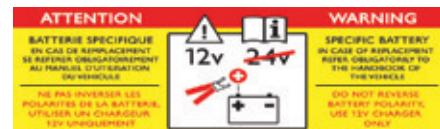
- i** In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear lever into position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

## Maintenance

- !** Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from automatic operation of START mode.

This system requires a specific battery with a special specification and technology (reference numbers available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop).

Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN introduces the risk of malfunction of the system.



- !** The Stop & Start system makes use of advanced technology. All work on this type of battery must be done only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

# Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be registered which will then be offered as settings for two systems: the speed limiter (a maximum speed) and the cruise control (cruising speed).

You can memorise up to six speed settings in the system, depending on version. By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

## With your Audio system



### Activating the function

#### Modifying a speed setting

- ☞ Go to the main menu by pressing the "MENU" button.
- ☞ Select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu and confirm.
- ☞ Select "Vehicle parameters" menu and confirm.
- ☞ Select the "Driving assistance" line and conform.
- ☞ Select "Speeds memorised" line and confirm.
- ☞ Select "Activation" to activate the function.
- ☞ Select the speed setting to be modified and confirm.
- ☞ Modify the speed setting.
- ☞ Select "OK" and confirm to save the modifications.



As a safety measure, the driver must only modify a speed setting when stationary.



### "MEM" button

- ☞ Press this button to display the list of memorised speed settings.

## With the touch screen tablet

### Modifying a speed setting

- ☞ Press this button to select the "Driving" menu.
- 
- ☞ In the secondary page, press "Speed settings".
- 
- ☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:
  - speed limiter
  - 
  - or
  - cruise control.
  - 
- ☞ Choose the speed setting to be modified.

| X   |      |   |
|-----|------|---|
| 120 | km/h |  |
| 1   | 2    | 3   |
| 4   | 5    | 6   |
| 7   | 8    | 9   |
|     | 0    |   |
| ✓   |      |   |



### "MEM" button

Press this button to select a speed settings for use by the speed limiter or cruise control. Refer to the corresponding section.

# Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

**i** The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h). The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

**!** The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter mode selection wheel.
2. Programmed value decrease button.
3. Programmed value increase button.
4. Speed limiter on / pause button.
5. Display memorised speed settings button.

## Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on / pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

## Switching on



- Turn the wheel **1** to the "LIMIT" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system) press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



- Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

## Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from your Audio system (only with the monochrome screen C):

- with the system first activated (see "Memorising speeds"),
- make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new limit speed,
- to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen tablet:

- press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



## Switching off

- Turn wheel 1 to the "0" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

## Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.



Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

# Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

- i** The cruise control is **switched on** manually.  
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:
- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of fourth gear or higher,
  - with an electronic gearbox, the gear selector at position **A**, or second gear or higher in manual mode,
  - with an automatic gearbox, the gear selector at position **D** or second gear or higher in manual mode.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):

- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

- i** Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

## Steering mounted controls



1. Cruise control mode selection wheel.
2. Button for setting the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lowering the cruise setting.
3. Button for setting the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raising the cruise setting.
4. Cruise control pause / resume button.
5. Display memorised speed settings button.

## Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selected indication.
8. Cruise speed setting.
9. Selecting a memorised cruise speed.

**!** The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

## Switching on



- Turn the wheel **1** to the "CRUISE" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

You can release the accelerator pedal.



- Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).



- Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

## Adjusting the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be activated.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- continuously, in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.



Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from your Audio system (only with the monochrome screen C):

- with the system first activated (see "Memorising speeds"),
- make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new cruise speed,
- to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen tablet:

- press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.



As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

When required (overtaking manoeuvre...), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.



To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, press button 4.

! Only use the cruise control if the traffic conditions will allow you to drive for a certain time at a steady speed and at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow...). In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the programmed speed: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

## Switching off

☞ Turn wheel 1 to the "0" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

## Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.



Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

# Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with HDi engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel; refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

If the tank on your vehicle is fitted with a misfuel prevention device, refer to the "Misfuel prevention (Diesel)" section.

**i** If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

## BlueHDI engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.



## 1.6 HDi engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.



## 2.0 HDi engine

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover for access to the priming pump.
- ☞ Slacken the bleed screw.
- ☞ Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until fuel appears in the transparent pipe.
- ☞ Tighten the bleed screw.
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine fails to start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine fails to start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again, then the starter.
- ☞ Put the style cover back in position and clip it in place, ensuring that it has clipped correctly.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

# Emergency or assistance call



## Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green LED and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.

The green LED goes off.

Pressing this button (at any time) for more than 8 seconds cancels the call.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

This call is dealt with by the "Localised Emergency Call", which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services.

In countries in which a centre is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

**i** If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on [www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com).

\* These services are subject to conditions and availability.  
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

## Localised Assistance Call

### Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green LED comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange LED flashes: there is a system fault.

If the orange LED is on continuously: the backup battery must be replaced.  
In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer.



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down. A voice message confirms that the call has been started\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.  
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.



If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes. In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.



For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

# 7-inch touch screen tablet

## GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



|  | Contents |
|--|----------|
| First steps                            | 22       |
| Steering mounted controls              | 24       |
| Menus                                  | 25       |
| Navigation                             | 26       |
| Navigation - Guidance                  | 34       |
| Traffic                                | 38       |
| Radio Media                            | 40       |
| Radio                                  | 46       |
| DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio | 48       |
| Media                                  | 50       |
| Settings                               | 54       |
| Internet                               | 62       |
| Internet browser                       | 63       |
| MirrorLink™                            | 66       |
| Telephone                              | 68       |
| Frequently asked questions             | 76       |

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of the energy economy mode message signals that the system is about to go into standby. Refer to the Energy economy (mode) section.

# First steps

Use the buttons below the touch screen tablet for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.

Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



**i** In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.

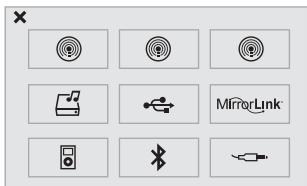
Primary page



## Secondary page

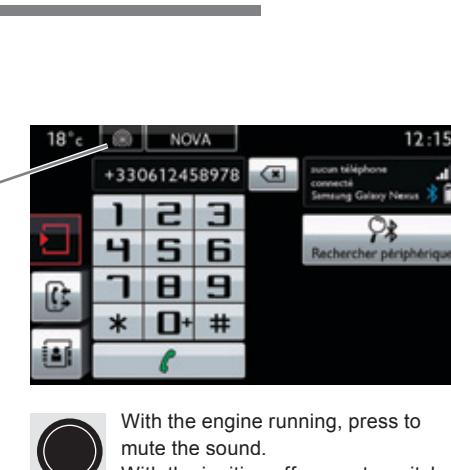


Short-cuts: using the virtual buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- "FM" / "AM" / "DAB" stations.
- "USB" memory stick.
- CD player (located in front panel).
- Jukebox\*, after first copying audio files to the internal memory of the system.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth\* and using Bluetooth\* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.  
With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.



Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).



In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.



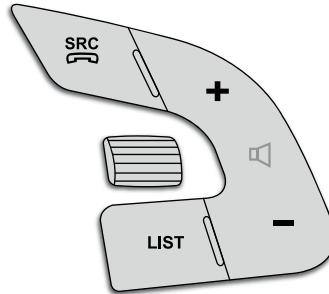
The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.  
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.



To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.  
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.  
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

\* Depending on equipment.

## Steering mounted controls



Media: change the multimedia source.  
Telephone: start a call.  
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).  
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than a call in progress, access to the telephone menu.



Radio, turn: automatic search for the previous / next station.  
Media, turn: previous / next track.  
Press: confirm a selection.



Radio: display the list of stations.  
Media: display the list of tracks.  
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

# Menus



## Navigation

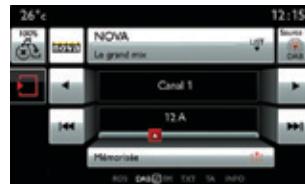
(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.



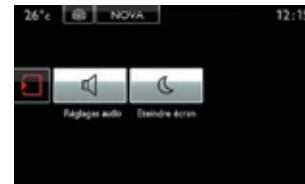
## Radio Media



Select radio, the different music sources and view photos.



## Settings

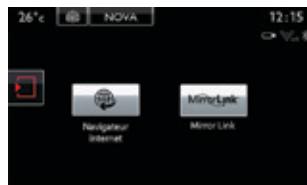


Set the sounds and brightness for the instruments and controls.



## Internet

(Depending on equipment)



Connect using the "Internet browser". Operate certain applications on your smartphone via "MirrorLink™".



## Telephone



Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.

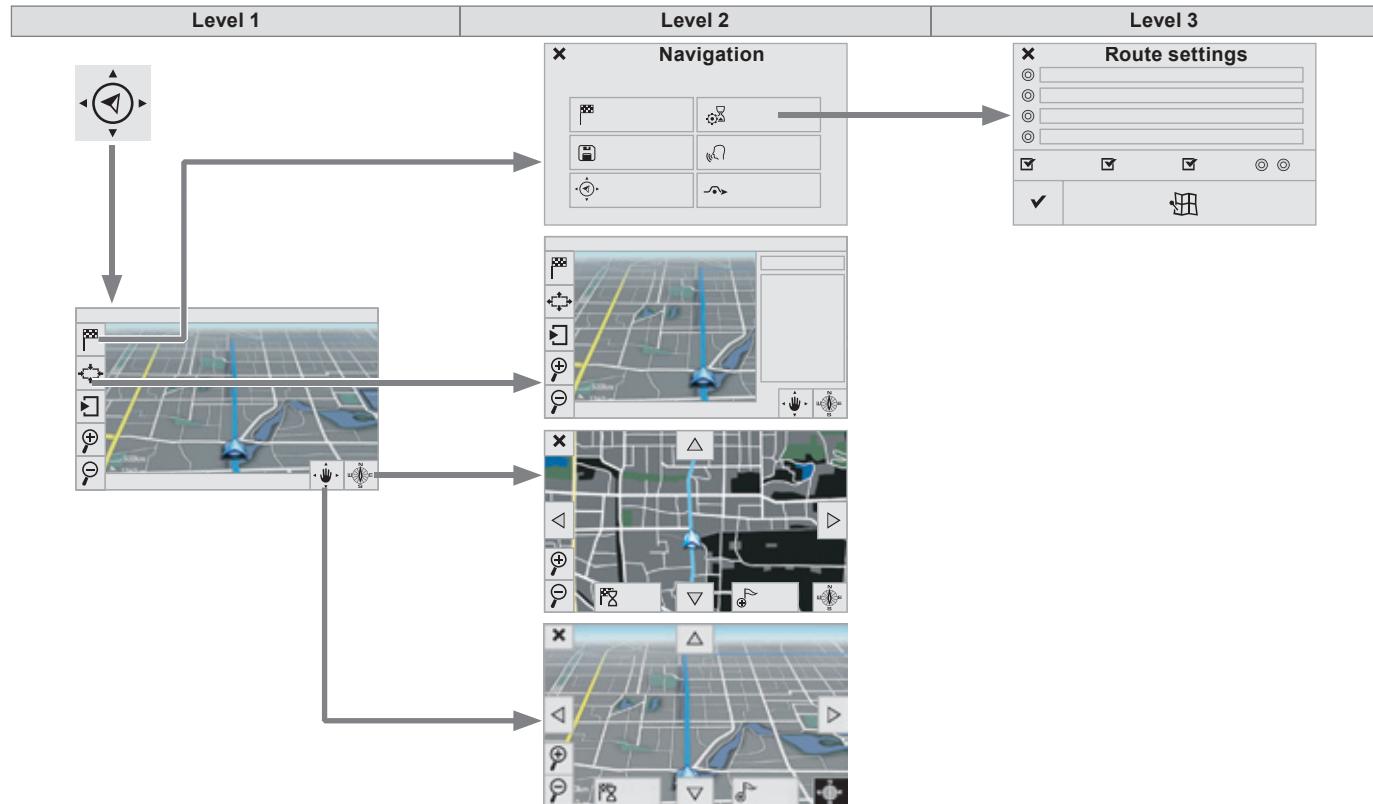


## Driving

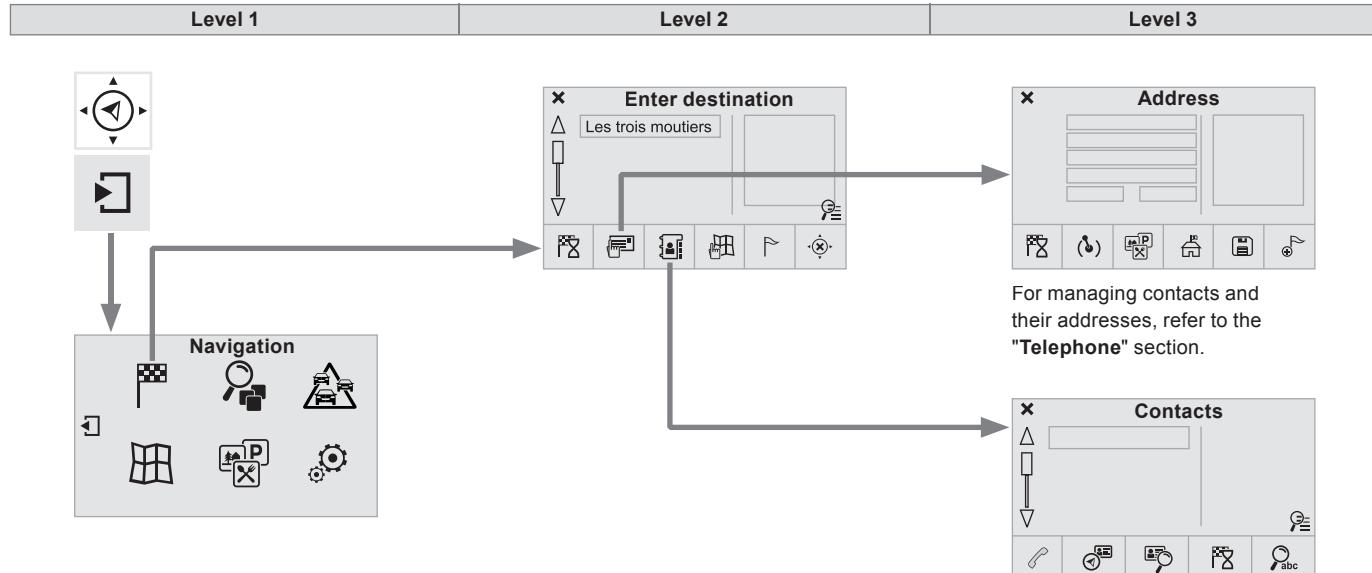


Access the trip computer, activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions. Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

# Navigation

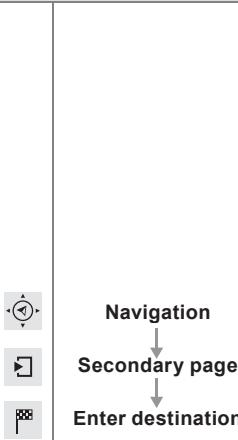
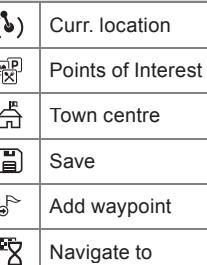
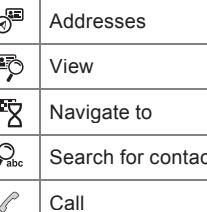


| Level 1  |   | Level 2  |  | Level 3   |                   | Comments   |
|--|---|--|--|---|-------------------|--|
| <br><br><br> | <b>Navigation</b><br> <b>Settings</b><br><b>Navigation</b> | <br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br><br> | <br> | <b>Enter destination</b>  |                   | <p>Display recent destinations</p> <p>Choose the navigation criteria.<br/>The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.</p> <p>Display the map and start navigation.</p> <p>Save the options.</p> <p>Save the current address.</p> <p>Delete the navigation information.</p> <p>Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.</p> <p>Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.</p> |
|  |   |  |  | <input type="radio"/>   | Fastest           |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input type="radio"/>   | Shortest          |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input type="radio"/>   | Time/distance     |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input type="radio"/>   | Ecological        |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | Tolls             |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | Ferries           |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | Traffic           |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input type="checkbox"/>  | Strict-Close      |  |
|  |   |  |  |  | Show route on map |  |
|  |   |  |  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>   | Confirm           |  |
|   | <b>Navigation</b>   | <br><br><br><br>  |   | <b>Save current location</b>  |                   | <p>Display in text mode</p> <p>Zoom in.</p> <p>Zoom out.</p> <p>Display in full screen mode.<br/>Use the arrows to move the map.</p> <p>Switch to 2D map.</p>  |
|  |   |  |  |  |                   |  |
|  |   |  |  |  |                   |  |
|  |   |  |  |  |                   |  |
|  |   |  |  |  |                   |  |



For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "Telephone" section.

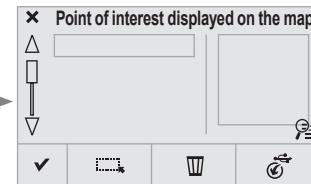
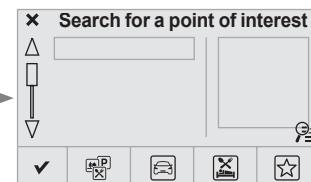
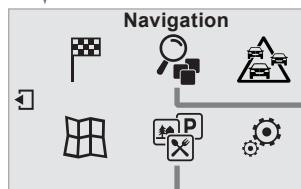
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "Telephone" section.

| Level 1   |  | Level 2   |  | Level 3 |  | Comments   |  |
|---|--|---|--|---------|--|--|--|
|  <p> <b>Navigation</b><br/> <b>Secondary page</b><br/> <b>Enter destination</b> </p> |  <p> <b>Address</b><br/> <b>Contacts</b><br/> <b>From map</b><br/> <b>Itinerary</b><br/> <b>Stop</b><br/> <b>Navigate to</b> </p> |  <p> <b>Curr. location</b><br/> <b>Points of Interest</b><br/> <b>Town centre</b><br/> <b>Save</b><br/> <b>Add waypoint</b><br/> <b>Navigate to</b> </p> | <p>Address settings.</p> <p>Save the current address.</p> <p>Add a waypoint to the route.</p> <p>Press to calculate the route.</p> |         |  | <p>Address settings.</p> <p>Save the current address.</p> <p>Add a waypoint to the route.</p> <p>Press to calculate the route.</p> |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |  <p> <b>Addresses</b><br/> <b>View</b><br/> <b>Navigate to</b><br/> <b>Search for contact</b><br/> <b>Call</b> </p>                                      | <p>Select a contact then calculate the route.</p>  |         |  | <p>Select a contact then calculate the route.</p>  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |   |  |         |  |  |  |
|   |  |  <b>From map</b>   |  |         |  | Display the map and zoom to view the roads.  |  |
|   |  |  <b>Itinerary</b>  |  |         |  | Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.  |  |
|   |  |  <b>Stop</b>   |  |         |  | Delete navigation information.   |  |
|   |  |  <b>Navigate to</b>  |  |         |  | Press to calculate the route.  |  |

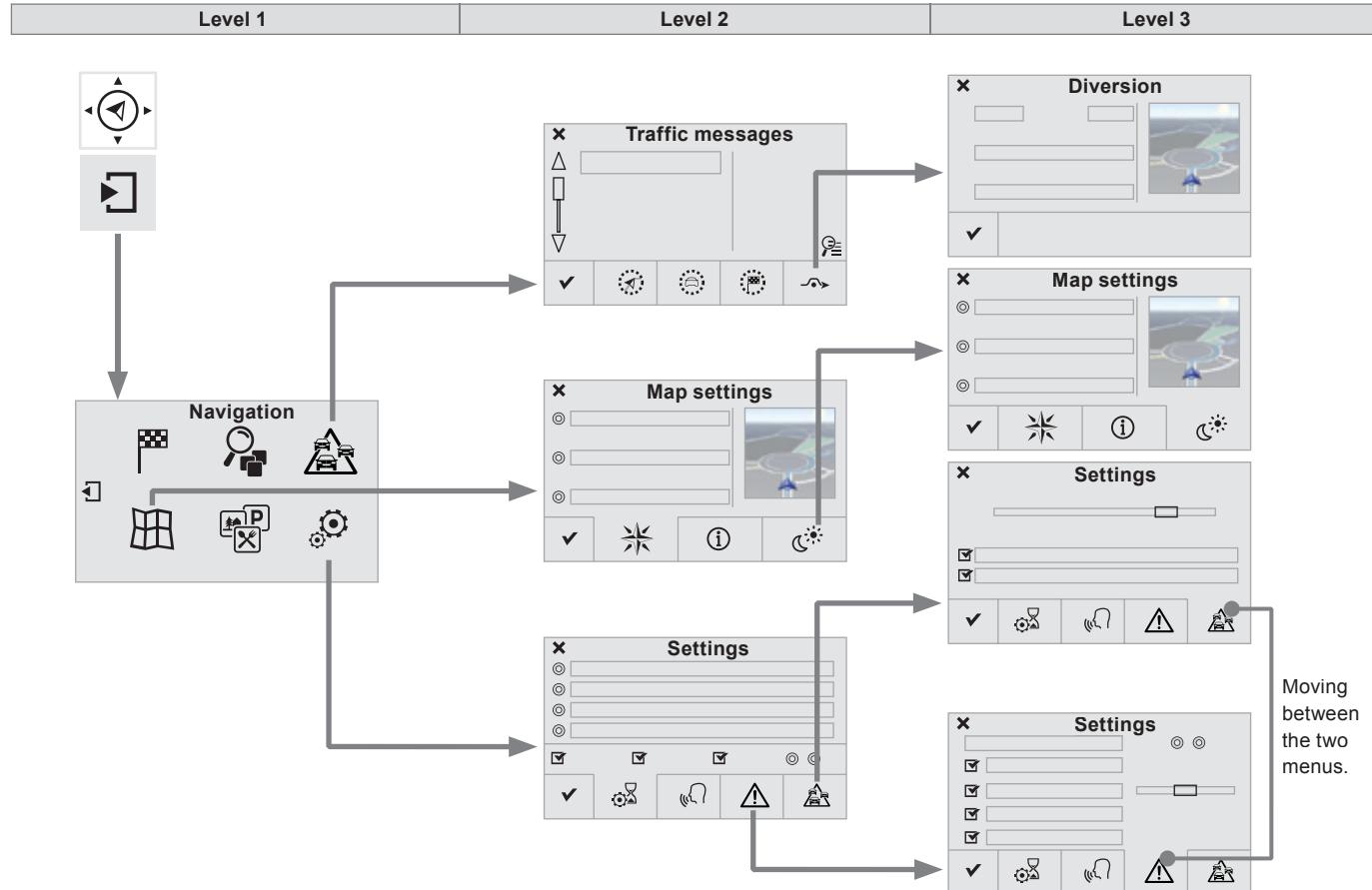
Level 1

Level 2

Level 3



| Level 1   |   | Level 2   |               | Level 3 |  | Comments   |
|---|---|---|---------------|---------|--|--|
| <br><br> | <b>Navigation</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Search for POI</b> |  | All POIs      |         |  | List of categories available.<br>After choosing the category, select the points of interest. |
|   |   |  | Garage        |         |  |  |
|   |   |  | Dining/hotels |         |  |  |
|   |   |  | Personal      |         |  |  |
|   |   |  | Search        |         |  | Save the settings.   |
| <br><br> | <b>Navigation</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Show POIs</b>      |  | Select all    |         |  | Choose the display settings for POIs.  |
|   |   |  | Delete        |         |  |  |
|   |   |  | Import POIs   |         |  |  |
|   |   |  | Confirm       |         |  | Save the options.  |



| Level 1   |   | Level 2   |   | Level 3 |  | Comments  |  |  |  |
|---|---|---|---|---------|--|---|--|--|--|
| <br><br> | <b>Navigation</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Traffic messages</b> |  <b>On the route</b>     |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Around vehicle</b>   |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Near destination</b> |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Detour</b>           | <input type="radio"/> Detour over a distance    |         |  | <p>Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.</p> |  |  |  |
|   |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Recalculate route         |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Finish</b>           |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |   |   |         |  | Save your selections.   |  |  |  |
| <br><br> | <b>Navigation</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Map settings</b>     |  <b>Orientation</b>      | <input type="radio"/> Flat view north heading   |         |  | <p>Choose the display and orientation of the map.</p>             |  |  |  |
|   |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Flat view vehicle heading |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Perspective view          |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Maps</b>             |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Aspect</b>           | <input type="radio"/> "Day" map colour          |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |   | <input type="radio"/> "Night" map colour        |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |   | <input type="radio"/> Automatic day/night       |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>          |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
| <br><br> | <b>Navigation</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Settings</b>         |  <b>Route settings</b>   |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Voice</b>            |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Alert!</b>           |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Traffic options</b>  |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>         |   |         |  |   |  |  |  |
|   |   |   |   |         |  | Save your selections.   |  |  |  |

# Navigation - Guidance

## Choosing a new destination

### Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Select the "**Country**:" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City**:" or its post code, the "**Road**:", the "**N°**". Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry. The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Include tollroads**", "**Include ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".



Press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press "**Settings**".



Press "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press "**Settings**".



Press "**Resume navigation**".

## Towards a recent destination



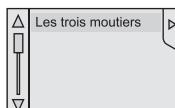
Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

## Towards a contact



To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



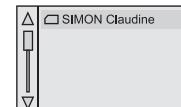
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

## Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

## Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**From map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

## Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**".



"**Garage**",



"**Dining/hotels**",

Or

**"Personal",**

Select a category from the list offered.

**Select "Search".**

Select a point of interest from the list offered.

**Select "Navigate to".**

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.

You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.  
The detailed procedure is available on:  
<http://citroen.navigation.com>.

## Hazard zone / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**".

It is then possible to activate Risk Areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk Area alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

**!** This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk Areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

## Traffic

### Traffic information Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Set the:



**"On the route"**,

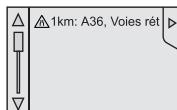


**"Around"**,



**"Near destination"**, filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.



Select the magnifying glasses to have vocal information.

**i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

## Setting filters



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Info options**".



Select:

- **"Warn of new messages"**,
- **"Speak messages"**.

Then enter the filter radius.



Select "**Confirm**".



**i** We recommend a filter radius of:

- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

## Receiving TA messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



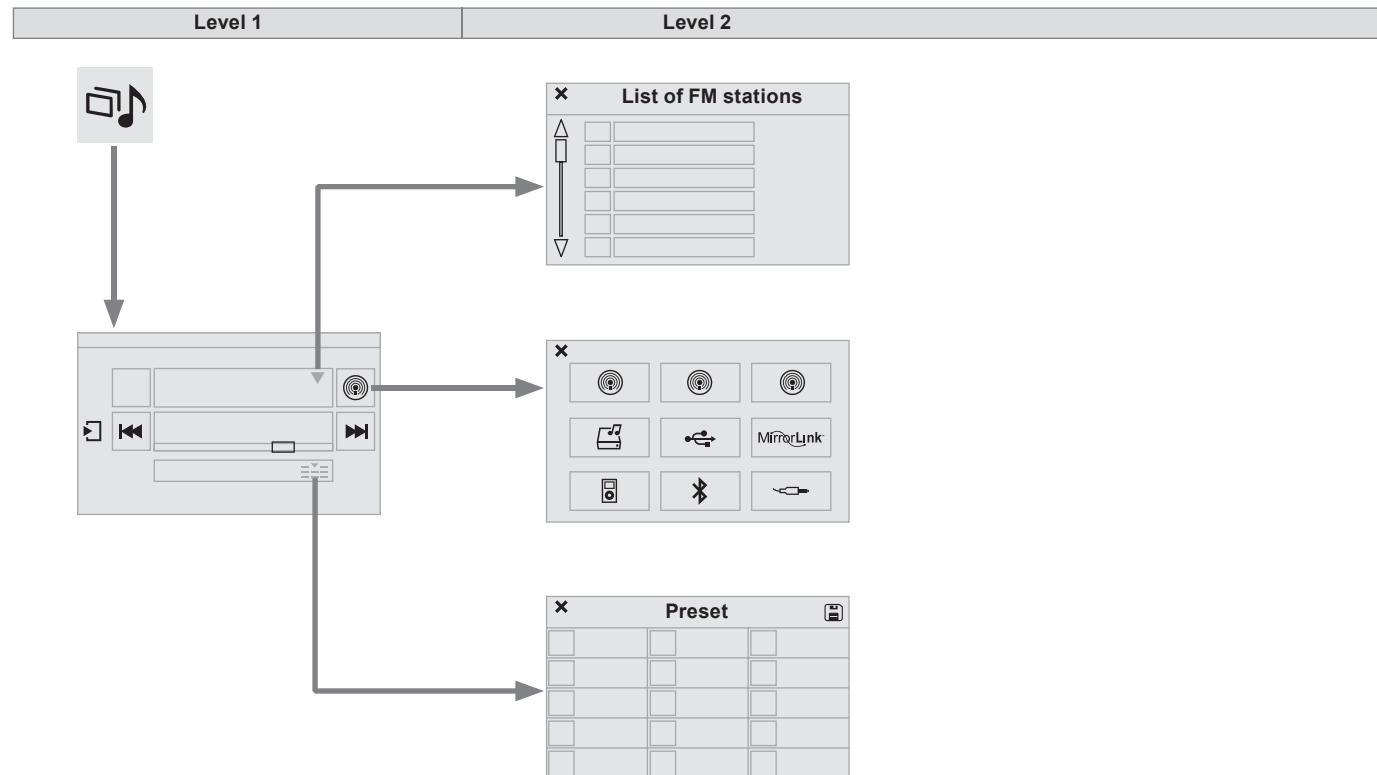
Select "**Voice**".



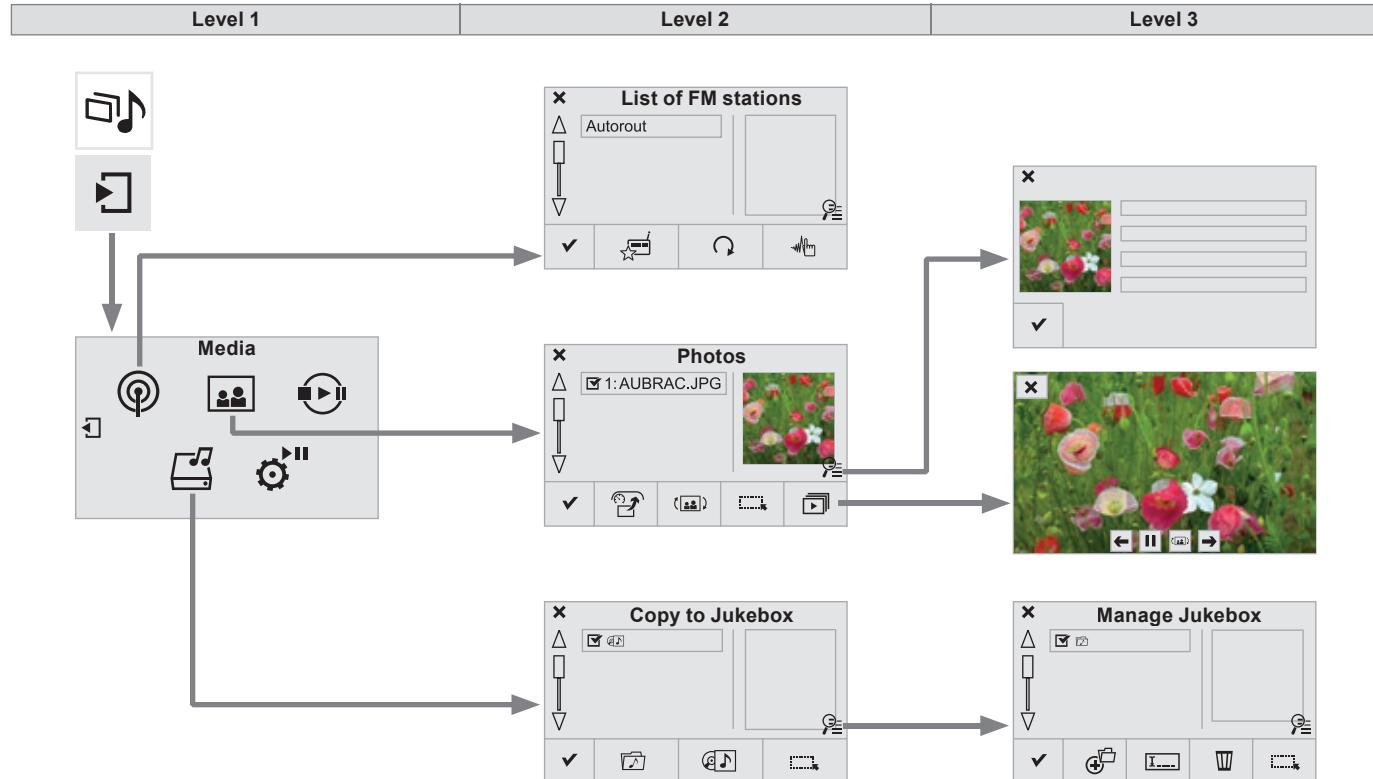
**Off** **On** Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

**i** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

# Radio Media



| Level 1  |                            | Level 2   |                     | Comments                               |
|--|----------------------------|---|---------------------|--|
|   | Radio Media<br>↓<br>List   |  | List of FM stations | Press on a radio station to select it. |
| <br> | Radio Media<br>↓<br>Source |  | FM Radio            | Select change of source.               |
|  |                            |  | DAB Radio           |  |
|  |                            |  | AM Radio            |  |
|  |                            |  | Jukebox             |  |
|  |                            |  | CD                  |  |
|  |                            |  | USB                 |  |
|  |                            |  | MirrorLink™         |  |
|  |                            |  | iPod                |  |
|  |                            |  | Bluetooth           |  |
|  |                            |  | AUX                 |  |
|   | Radio Media<br>↓<br>Preset |  |                     | Press an empty location to Preset it.  |

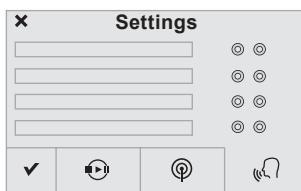
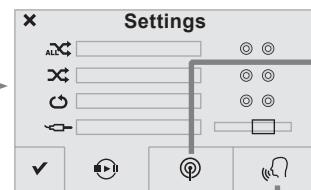
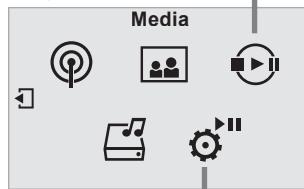
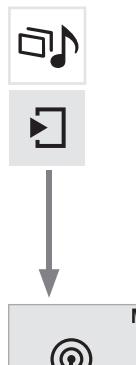


| Level 1  |  | Level 2   |  | Level 3 |  | Comments   |
|--|--|---|--|---------|--|--|
| <br><br> | <b>Radio Media</b><br><br><b>Secondary page</b><br><br><b>Radio list</b>     |  <b>Preset</b>           |  |         |  | Press a radio station to select it.  |
|  |  |  <b>Update list</b>      |  |         |  | Update the list of stations received.  |
|  |  |  <b>Frequency</b>        |  |         |  | Enter the desired radio frequency.   |
|  |  |  <b>Confirm</b>          |  |         |  | Save the settings.   |
| <br><br> | <b>Radio Media</b><br><br><b>Secondary page</b><br><br><b>Photos</b>         |  <b>Home screen</b>      |  |         |  | Display the selected photo in the home page.   |
|  |  |  <b>Rotate</b>           |  |         |  | Rotate the photo 90°.  |
|  |  |  <b>Select all</b>       |  |         |  | Select all the photos in the list.<br>Press again to deselect.   |
|  |  |  <b>Slideshow</b>        |  <b>Previous photo.</b> |         |  | Display the photos in sequence, full screen.<br>The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png. |
|  |  |   |  <b>Pause / Play.</b>   |         |  |  |
|  |  |   |  <b>Next photo.</b>     |         |  |  |
|  |  |  <b>Full screen</b>      |  |         |  | Display the selected photo full-screen.  |
| <br><br> | <b>Radio Media</b><br><br><b>Secondary page</b><br><br><b>Manage Jukebox</b> |  <b>Sort by folder</b>   |  |         |  |  |
|  |  |  <b>Sort by album</b>    |  |         |  | Choose a selection mode.   |
|  |  |  <b>Select all</b>       |  |         |  |  |
|  |  |  <b>Copy</b>             |  |         |  |  |
|  |  |  <b>Magnifying glass</b> |  <b>Create folder</b>   |         |  |  |
|  |  |   |  <b>Rename</b>          |         |  |  |
|  |  |   |  <b>Delete</b>          |         |  |  |
|  |  |   |  <b>Select all</b>      |         |  |  |
|  |  |   |  <b>Confirm</b>         |         |  |  |
|  |  |   |  |         |  | Save the settings.   |

Level 1

Level 2

Level 3



| Level 1   | Level 2   | Level 3  | Comments                             |
|---|---|--|--------------------------------------|
|  Radio Media<br> Secondary page<br> Media list |   |  | Presentation of the last media used. |
|   |  Media<br> Settings         |  Random (all tracks):<br> Random (current album):<br> Loop:<br> Aux. amplification                     | Choose the play settings.            |
|  Radio Media<br> Secondary page<br> Settings   |  Radio<br> Settings         |  RDS options<br> DAB/FM options<br> Display Radio Text<br> Digital radio slideshow display             | Activate or deactivate the settings. |
|   |  Announcements<br> Settings |  Traffic announcements (TA)<br> News - Weather<br> Sport - Programm info<br> Flash - Unforeseen events | Activate or deactivate the settings. |
|   |  Confirm   |  | Save the settings.                   |

# Radio

## Selecting a station



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or



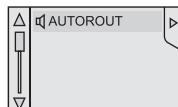
Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.



Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Preset**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.



If necessary, select change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



**"AM Radio".**



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

## Changing a radio frequency



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



**By automatic frequency search**



Press **◀** or **▶** to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

**THEN**



Select change source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



**"AM Radio".**

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "Confirm".



#### Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

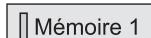
To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

## Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "Preset".



Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number presets (memorises) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

## Recall pre-set stations

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "Save".



## Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "Settings".



Select "Radio".

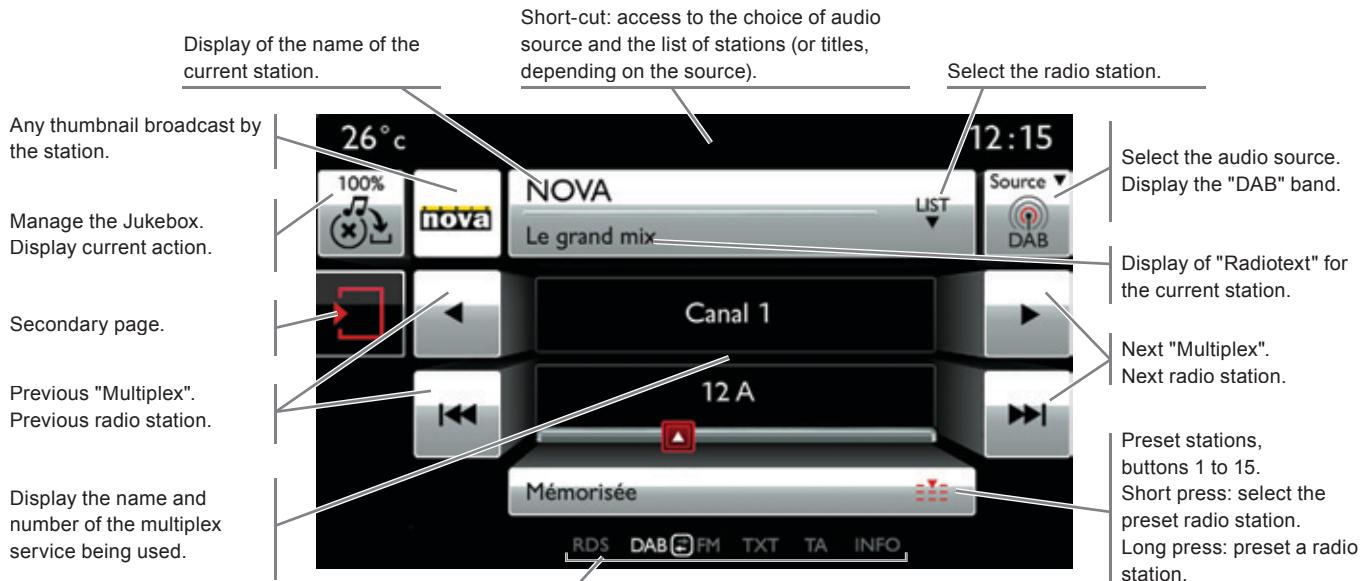


Activate/deactivate "RDS options".



RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

# DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of options:

if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,  
if active and available, the display will be blank.

**i** If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.



Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems. It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics. This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

## Digital radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page. The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "List" in the primary page.

or



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

## DAB / FM auto tracking

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**RADIO**".



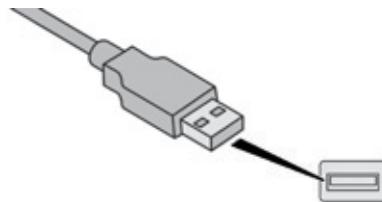
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

**i** If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("DAB/FM" option greyed out), or "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

# Media

## USB player



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

## CD player

Insert the CD in the player.

## Selection of source



Press on **Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Choose the source.



The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.



Press **OK** to confirm the selection.

## Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and. mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.

No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played. "wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ü) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.

If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (28-bit file allocation table).

! The system does not support the simultaneous connection of two identical devices (two memory sticks, two Apple® players) but it is possible to connect one memory stick and one Apple® player at the same time.

**i** It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable not supplied. Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".

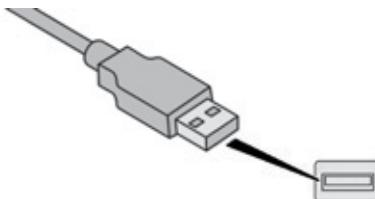
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.  
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

## Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).  
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts). The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Managing the Jukebox

Connect the device (MP3 player...) to the USB port or auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable audio cable.

 When no audio file is copied to the system, which has a capacity of 8 GB, all of the Jukebox function symbols are greyed and are not available.



Select "Media list".



Select copy "Copy Jukebox".



Select "Sort by folder".

Or



"Sort by album".



Select the magnifying glass to enter the folder or album and select audio file by audio file.



Select "Confirm" then "Copy".



Select "New folder" to create a folder structure in the Jukebox.

Or

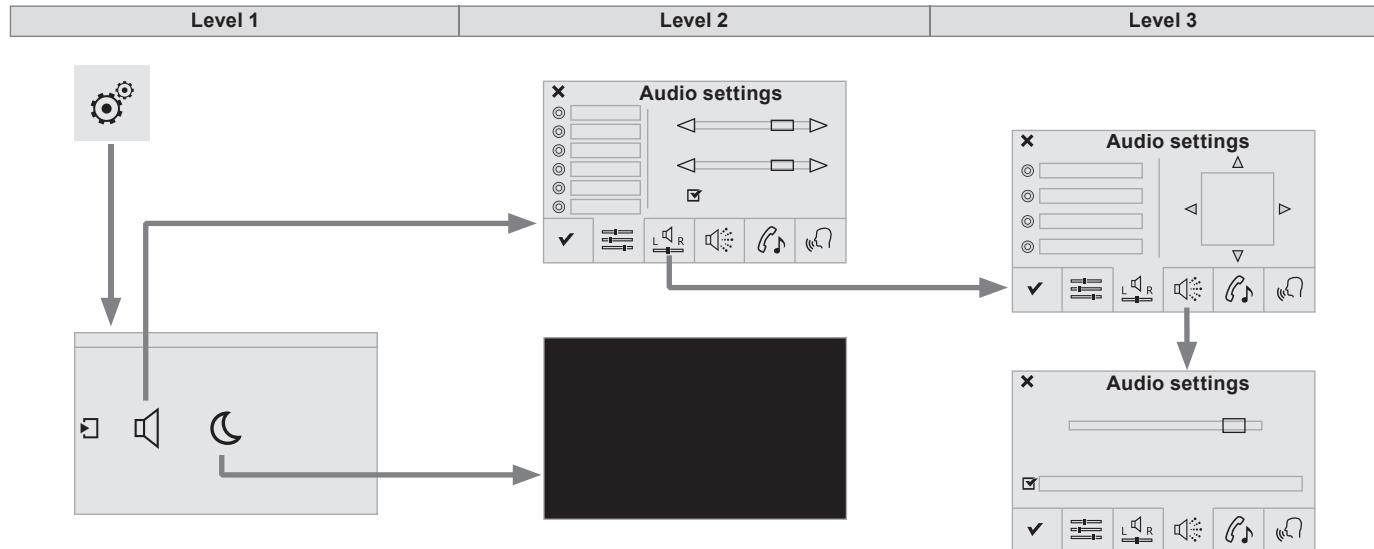


Select "Keep structure" to retain the structure from the device.

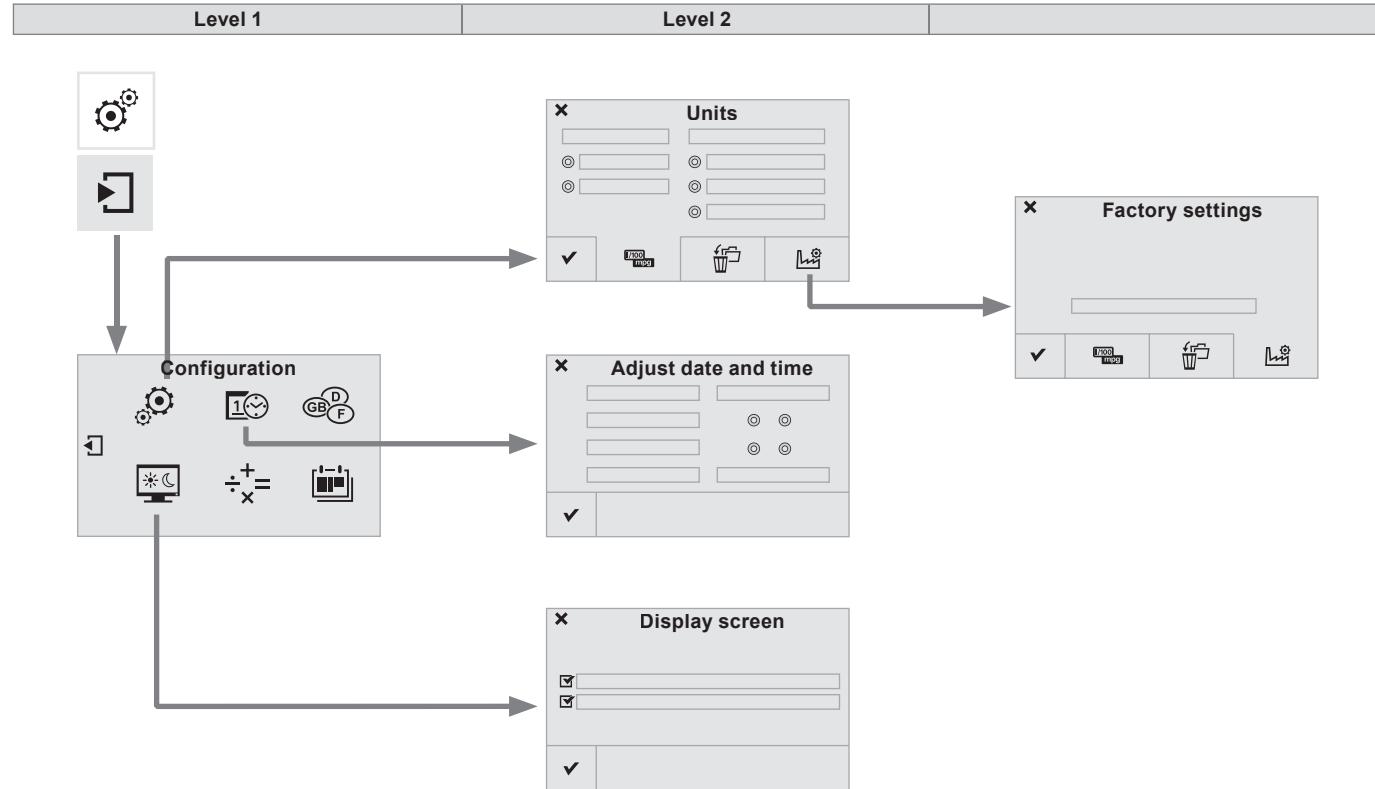


While copying the system returns to the primary page; you can go back to the copy view at any time by selecting this button.

# Settings



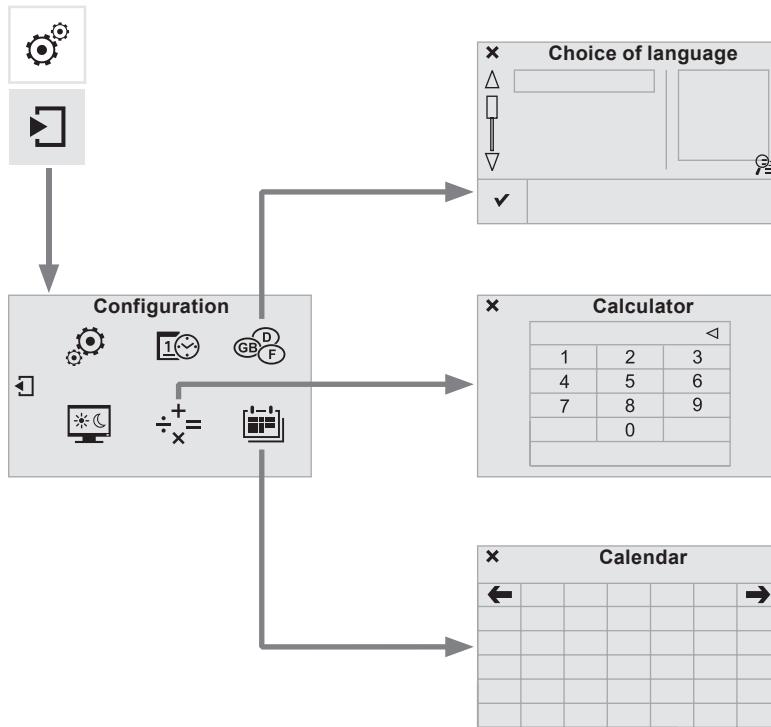
| Level 1   |  | Level 2              |  | Level 3 | Comments  |
|---|--|----------------------|--|---------|---|
| <br><br><b>Settings</b><br><b>↓</b><br><b>Audio settings</b>  | <br><br><br><br><br> | <b>Ambience</b>      |  |         | Choose the sound ambience.  |
|   |  | <b>Balance</b>       |  |         | Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.                               |
|   |  | <b>Sound effects</b> |  |         | Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.                       |
|   |  | <b>Ringtones</b>     |  |         | Set the telephone ringtone and volume.                                      |
|   |  | <b>Voice</b>         |  |         | Set the volume and voice for speaking street names.                         |
|   |  | <b>Confirm</b>       |  |         | Save your settings.   |
| <br><br><b>Settings</b><br><b>↓</b><br><b>Turn off screen</b> |   |                      |  |         | Function that turns off the display.<br>Pressing the screen reactivates it. |



| Level 1   |  | Level 2  |  | Comments  |
|---|--|--|--|---|
| <br><br> | <b>Settings</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>System Settings</b> | <br><b>Units</b>            |  | Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature. |
|   |  | <br><b>Delete data</b>      |  | Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.                    |
|   |  | <br><b>Factory settings</b> |  | Return to factory settings.   |
|   |  | <br><b>Confirm</b>          |  | Save the settings.  |
| <br><br> | <b>Settings</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Time/Date</b>       | <br><b>Confirm</b>          |  | Set the date and time then confirm.                                       |
|   |  |  |  |   |
|   |  |  |  |   |
| <br><br> | <b>Settings</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Screen settings</b> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/><br><b>Activate automatic text scrolling</b>                              |  | Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.                          |
|   |  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/><br><b>Activate animations</b>  |  |   |
|   |  | <br><b>Confirm</b>          |  |   |

Level 1

Level 2



| Level 1   |   | Level 2   |         | Comments                          |
|---|---|---|---------|-----------------------------------|
|    | <p>Settings<br/>↓<br/>Secondary page<br/>↓<br/>Languages</p>  |  | Confirm | Select the language then confirm. |
|    | <p>Settings<br/>↓<br/>Secondary page<br/>↓<br/>Calculator</p> |   |         | Select the calculator.            |
|    | <p>Settings<br/>↓<br/>Secondary page<br/>↓<br/>Calendar</p>   |   |         | Select the calendar.              |

## Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".



The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.



The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source. The settings for **F-R balance** and **L-R balance** are common to all sources.



- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiances)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Balance**" ("Driver", "All passengers", "Front only")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to vehicle speed:**" (Activate/Deactivate)



On-board audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

## Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.



Select "**Languages**" to change language.

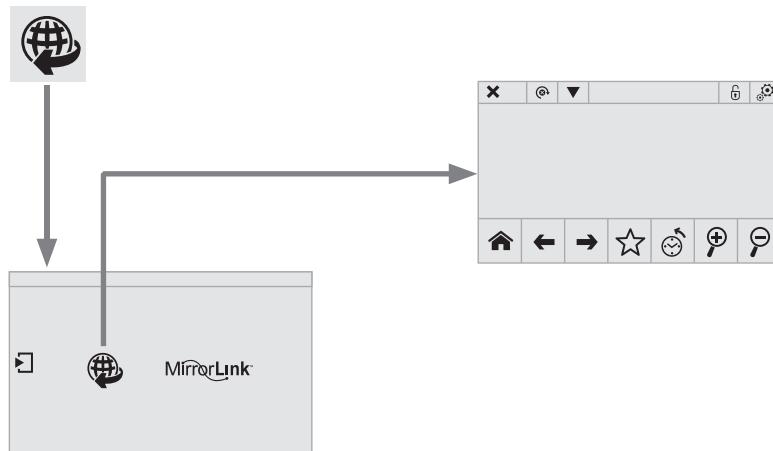


Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

# Internet



# Internet browser



Press on **Internet** to display the primary page.

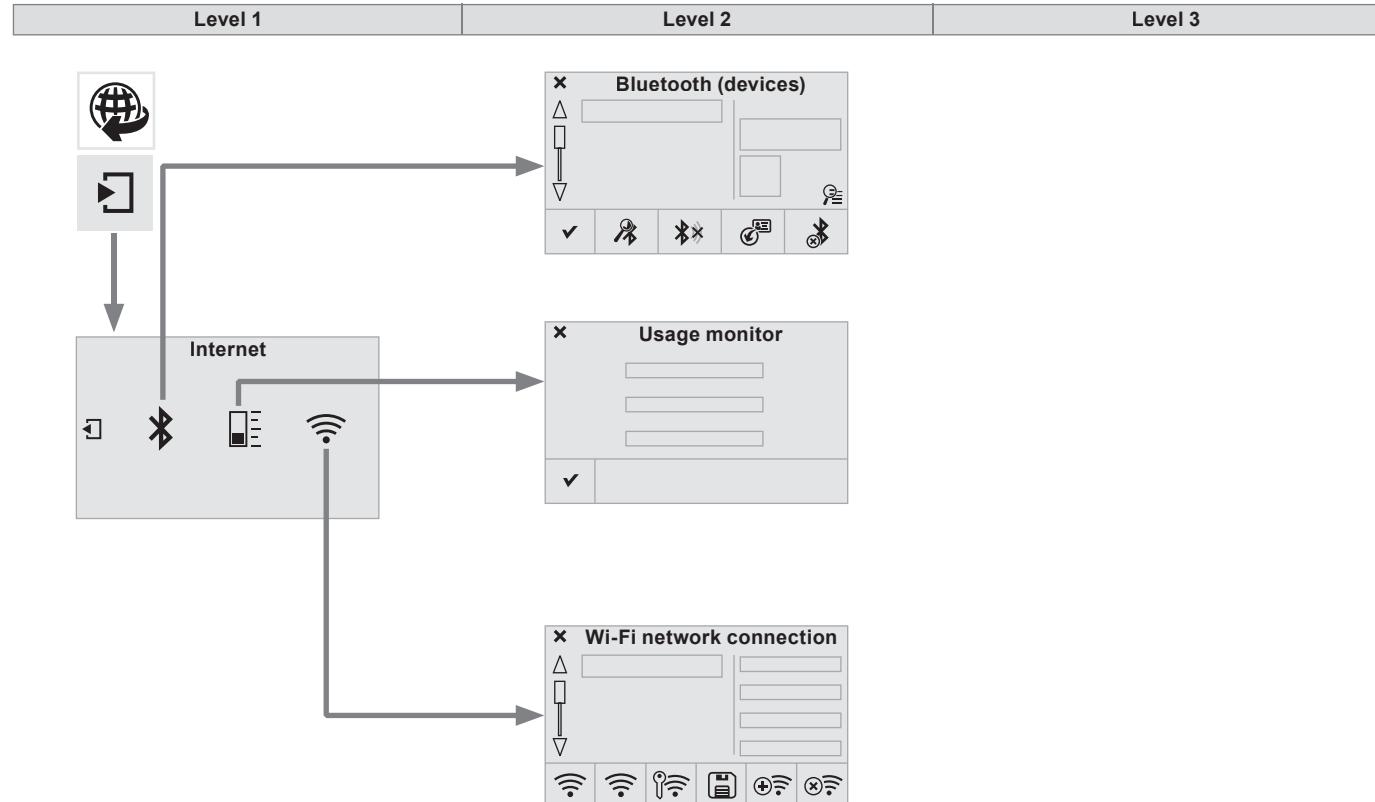


Press on "**Internet browser**" to displays the browser's home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, option "Internet", see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

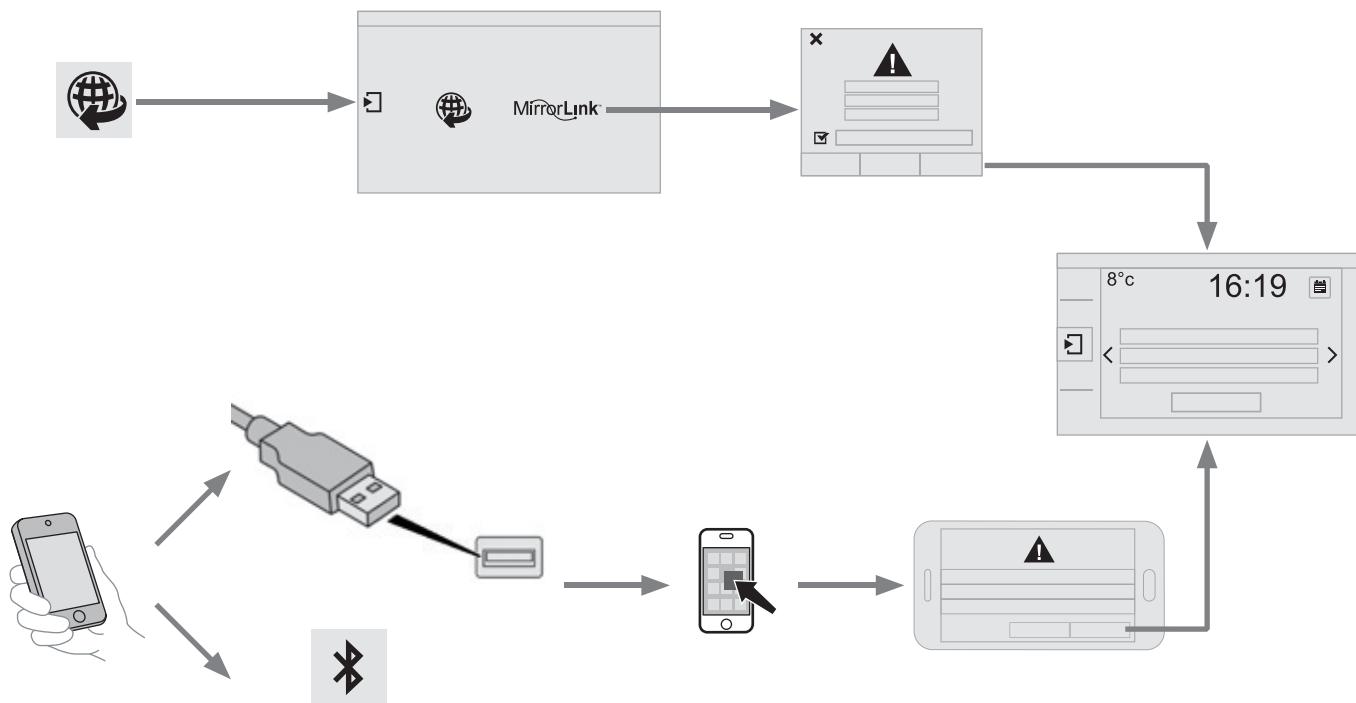


Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.



| Level 1   |  | Level 2   |                       | Level 3 | Comments  |
|---|--|---|-----------------------|---------|---|
| <br><br> | Internet<br>↓<br>Secondary page<br>↓<br>Bluetooth Connection |  | Search                |         | Start the search for a device to connect.                                     |
|   |  |  | Connect / Disconnect  |         | Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.                 |
|   |  |  | Update                |         | Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system. |
|   |  |  | Delete                |         | Delete the selected telephone.  |
|   |  |  | Confirm               |         | Save the settings.  |
| <br>  | Internet<br>↓<br>Secondary page<br>↓<br>Transfer rate        |   | Reset                 |         | Reset the usage monitor, them confirm.  |
|   |  |  | Confirm               |         |   |
| <br><br> | Internet<br>↓<br>Secondary page<br>↓<br>WiFi connection      |  | All                   |         | Display all Wi-Fi networks.   |
|   |  |  | Secure                |         | Display secure Wi-Fi networks.  |
|   |  |  | Stored                |         | Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).                                       |
|   |  |  | Add                   |         | Add a new Wi-Fi network.  |
|   |  |  | Activate / Deactivate |         | Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.                                       |
|   |  |  | Connect               |         | Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.                 |

## MirrorLink™



## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.

The principles and standards are constantly evolving; for information on supported smartphones, go to the CITROËN website for your country. Select MyCITROËN if present.



Please note:

- if your mobile is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.
- iPhone® is not supported yet; an Apple® application, "CarPlay®", is being developed.



As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

and



a USB cable is connected. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "Internet" to display the primary page.



Press "MirrorLink™" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone.



During the procedure, a page showing the conditions for use is displayed.

Accept to start and end the connection.

The "Audio source" and "Telephone" functions remain available in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display.

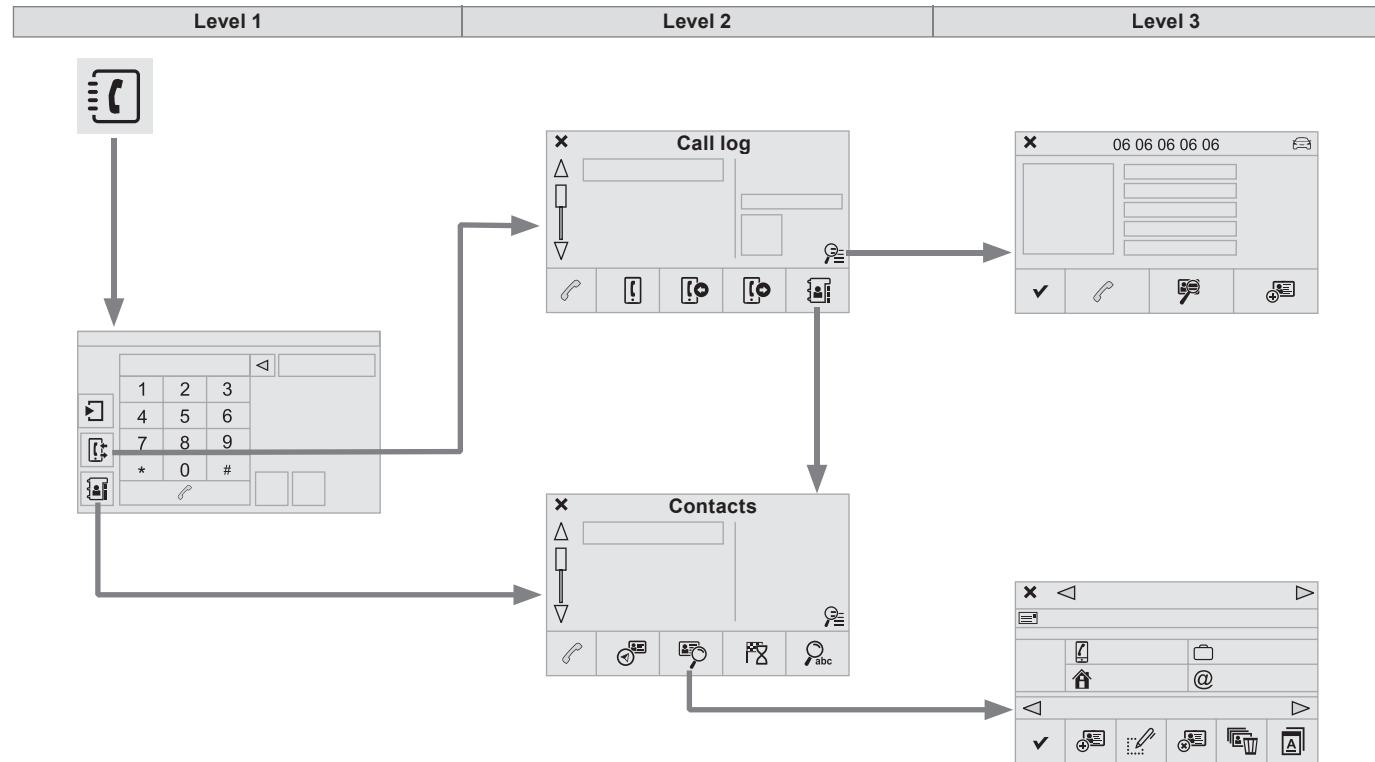
Go to the home page to return to the "MirrorLink™" display.

## Voice recognition

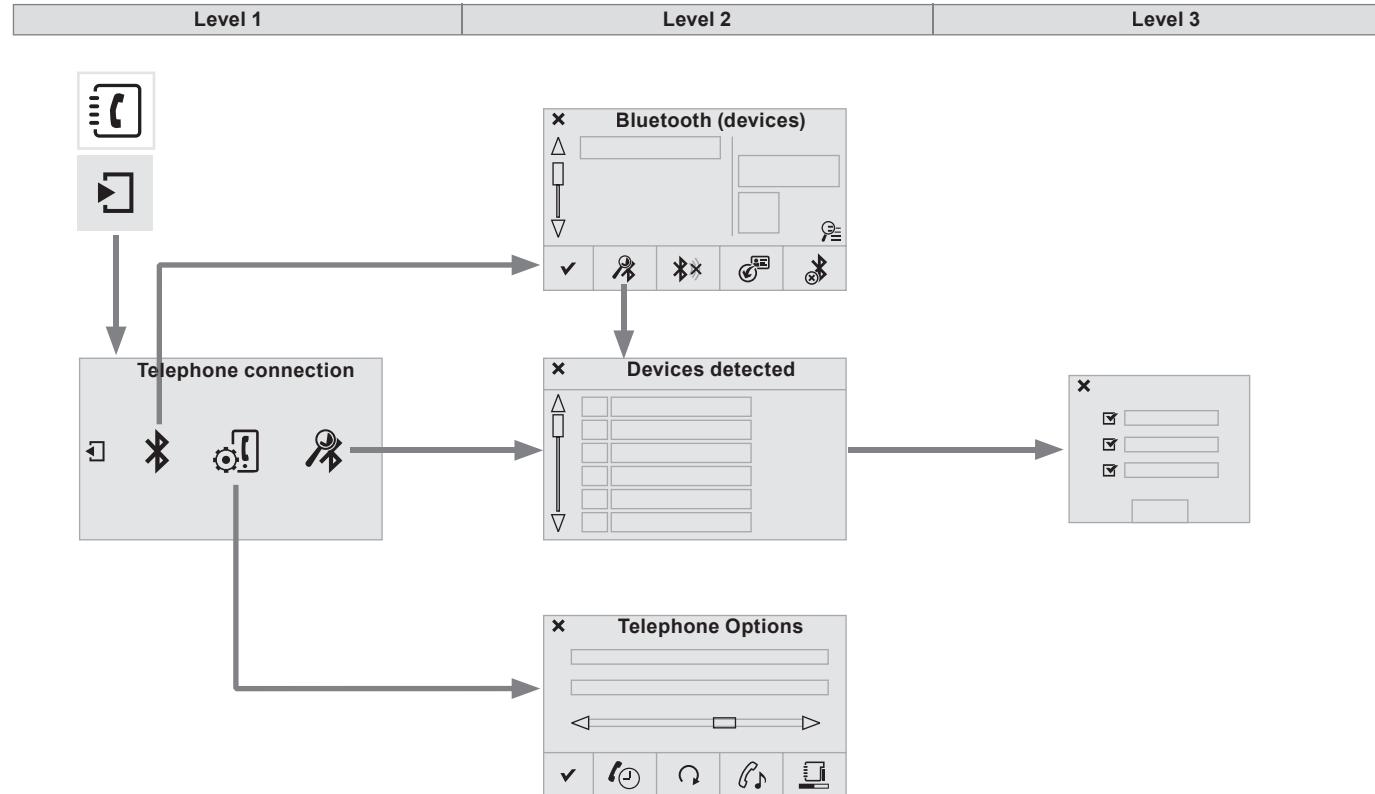
Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Voice recognition requires a compatible telephone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

# Telephone



| Level 1  |  | Level 2  |  | Level 3 |  | Comments                              |
|--|--|--|--|---------|--|---------------------------------------|
| <br> | <b>Telephone</b><br><br><b>Call log</b> |  All calls          |  |         |  | After making choices, start the call. |
|  |  |  Incoming calls     |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Outgoing calls     |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Contacts           |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Magnifying glass   |  View   |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  |  Create   |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Call               |  |         |  |                                       |
| <br> | <b>Telephone</b><br><br><b>Contacts</b> |  Addresses          |  |         |  | After making choices, start the call. |
|  |  |                     |  New<br> Modify<br> Delete<br> Delete all<br> Search for contact<br> Confirm |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Navigate to        |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Search for contact |  |         |  |                                       |
|  |  |  Call               |  |         |  |                                       |



| Level 1   |   | Level 2   |                                     | Level 3         |  | Comments   |
|---|---|---|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|--|
| <br><br> | <p>Telephone connection</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>Bluetooth Connection</p> |  <b>Search</b>             |                                     |                 |  | Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.   |
|   |   |  <b>Connect/Disconnect</b> |                                     |                 |  | Start or stop the Bluetooth connection to the selected peripheral device.                                    |
|   |   |  <b>Update</b>             |                                     |                 |  | Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.                           |
|   |   |  <b>Delete</b>             |                                     |                 |  | Delete the selected telephone.   |
|   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>            |                                     |                 |  | Save the settings.   |
| <br><br> | <p>Telephone connection</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>Search for devices</p>   |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Telephone       |  | Start the search for peripheral devices.   |
|   |   | <b>Devices detected</b>   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Audio streaming |  |  |
|   |   |   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Internet        |  |  |
| <br><br> | <p>Telephone connection</p> <p>Secondary page</p> <p>Telephone options</p>    |  <b>Put on hold</b>        |                                     |                 |  | Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.           |
|   |   |  <b>Update</b>             |                                     |                 |  | Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.                            |
|   |   |  <b>Ringtones</b>          |                                     |                 |  | Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.  |
|   |   |  <b>Memory info.</b>       |                                     |                 |  | Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth contacts. |
|   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>            |                                     |                 |  | Save the settings.   |

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

### Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "OK" and confirm.

### Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select **Search**.  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".



Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:

- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

## Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

### Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

### Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The two profiles may both connect by default.

Visit [www.citroen.co.uk](http://www.citroen.co.uk) for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.



! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.

If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

## Managing paired telephones

 This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

## Making a call

 Using the telephone is not recommended while driving. Park the vehicle. Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

### Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad. Press "**Call**" to start the call.

### Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

## Managing contacts / entries



Select "Contacts".



Select "Call".

### Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "Call log".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "Contacts".



Select "Add contact".



Select "Create" to add a new contact.



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.



Select "**Directory information**" for the number of entries used, available, ...

# Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Navigation

| QUESTION  | ANSWER  | SOLUTION   |
|---|---|--|
| The route calculation is not successful.                              | The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).   | Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.   |
| The POIs do not appear.   | The POIs have not been selected.  | Select the POIs in the list of POIs.   |
| The Hazard zone audible warning does not work.                        | The audible warning is not active.  | Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.  |
| The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route. | The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.  | Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings.  |
| I receive a Accident-prone area alert which is not on my route.       | Other than guidance, the system announces all Hazard zones positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Hazard zone located on nearby or parallel roads. | Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Accident-prone area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement. |

| QUESTION   | ANSWER  | SOLUTION  |
|--|---|---|
| Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time. | On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.                               | Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map). |
|  | The filters are too restrictive.  | Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.  |
|  | In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.                                | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.                              |
| The altitude is not displayed.                                       | On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.              | Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.               |
|  | Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary. | This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.                            |

## Radio

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|---|--|---|
| The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...). | The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.     | Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area. |
|   | The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.   | This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.  |
|   | The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).  | Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.  |
| I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.   | The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.   |   |
|   | Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).<br>The system interprets this information as the name of the station. |   |
| The name of the radio station changes.  |  |   |

## Media

| QUESTION   | ANSWER  | SOLUTION   |
|--|---|--|
| Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).                        | Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).  | Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.   |
| When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files. | When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players. | Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).   |
| The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.  | The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up.</li> </ul>  |
|  | The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...).   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged.</li> </ul>   |
|  | The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section.</li> <li>- The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs.</li> <li>- Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.</li> </ul> |
| There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.                | When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.   | This phenomenon is normal.   |

| QUESTION   | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|--|--|---|
| The CD player sound is poor.   | The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.                           | Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.    |
|  | The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable. | Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience. |
| Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.            | The audio system does not display some types of characters.            | Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.               |
| Playing of streaming files does not start.   | The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.       | Start the playback from the device.                               |
| The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio. | The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information. |   |

## Settings

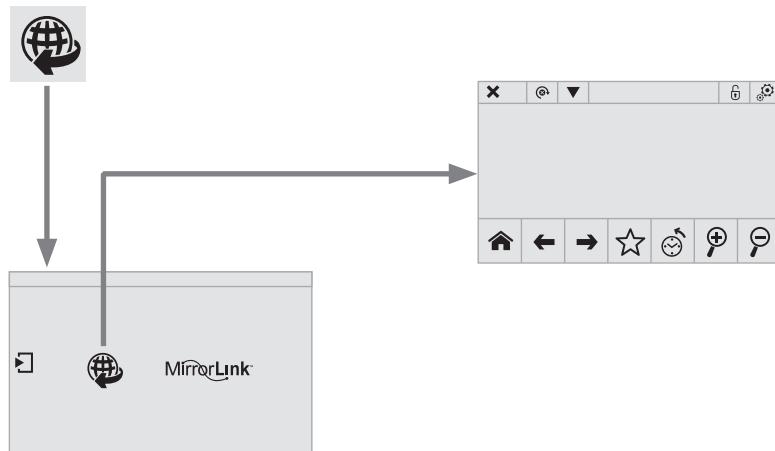
| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION  |
|---|--|---|
| In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. | The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.   | Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.    |
| In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.              |  |   |
| When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.     | The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible. | Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience. |
| When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.       |  |   |

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|---|--|--|
| There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources. | For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.                                    | Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the Audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "Linear", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode. |
| With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.    | When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.<br>The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery. | Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.   |

## Telephone

| QUESTION  | ANSWER   | SOLUTION   |
|---|--|--|
| I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.                              | The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on.</li> <li>- Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".</li> </ul> |
|   | The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.   | You can check the compatibility of your telephone at <a href="http://www.citroen.co.uk/services">www.citroen.co.uk (services)</a> .  |
| The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible. | The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.  | Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.  |
|   | The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.  | Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).  |
| Some contacts are duplicated in the list.                             | The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated. | Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".  |
| Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.                         | Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.  | Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.   |
| The system does not receive SMS text messages.                        | The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.  |  |

# Connected services



# Internet browser



Press on **Connected services** to display the primary page.

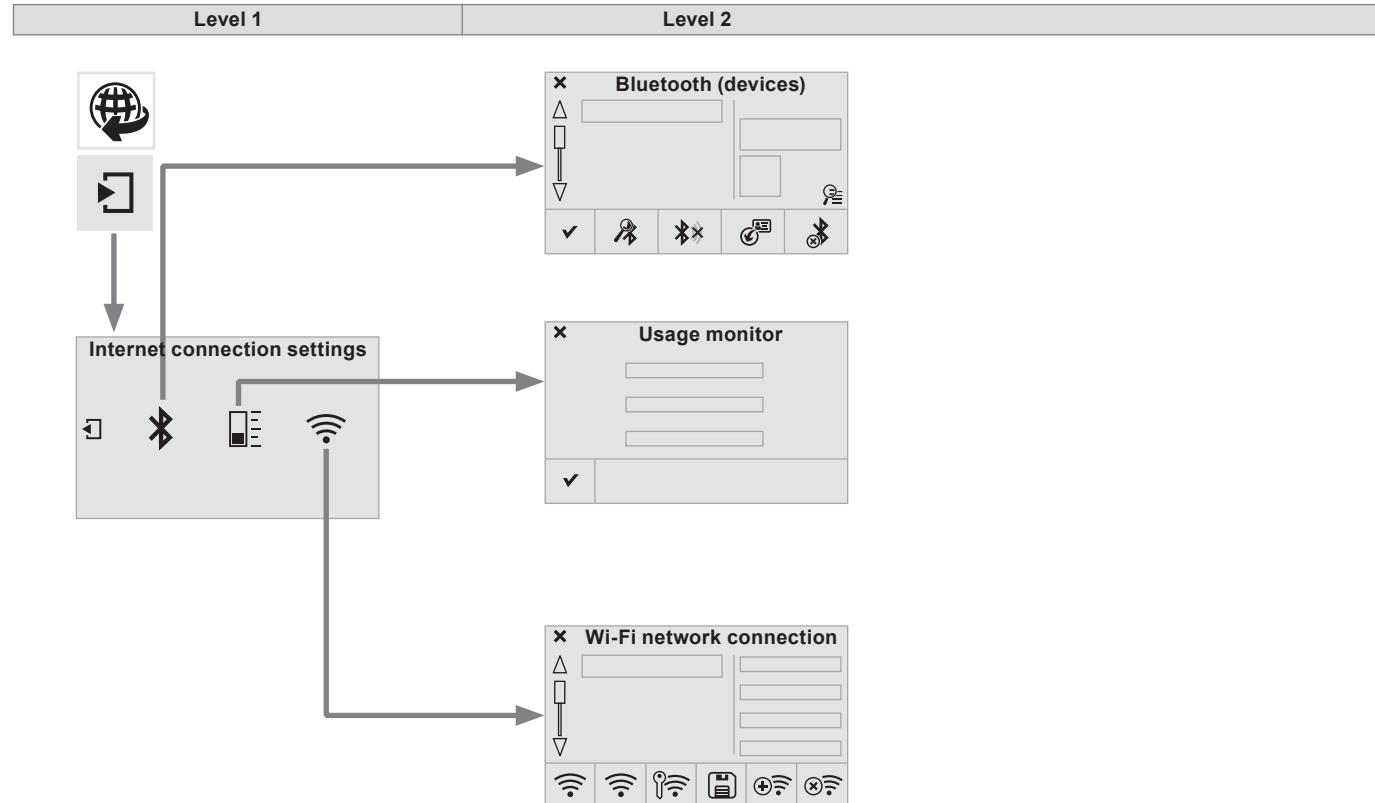


Press on "**Internet browser**" to displays the browser's home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, option "Internet", see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

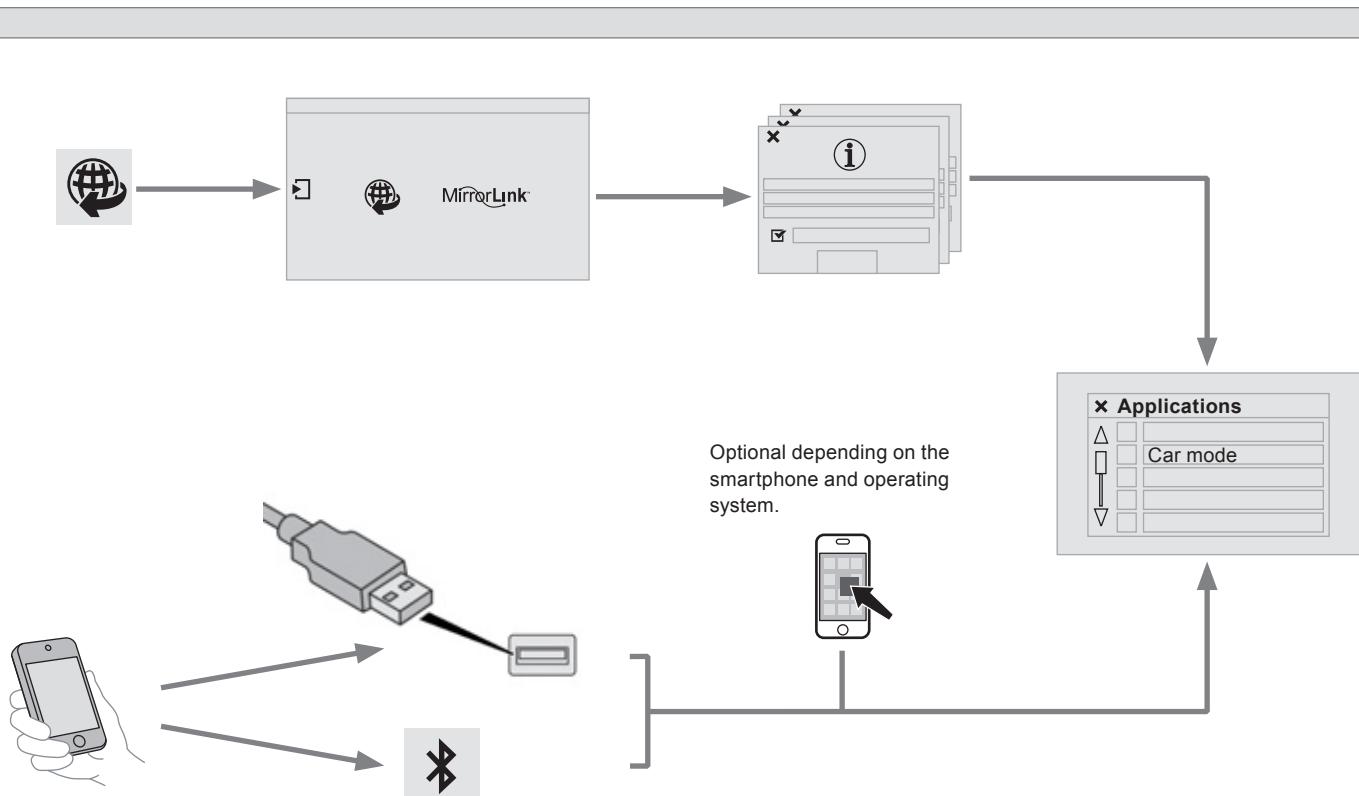


Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.



| Level 1   |   | Level 2   |              | Comments  |
|---|---|---|--------------|---|
| <br><br> | <b>Connected services</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Bluetooth connection</b> |  <b>Search</b>               |              | Start the search for a device to connect.                                     |
|   |   |  <b>Connect / Disconnect</b> |              | Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.                 |
|   |   |  <b>Update</b>               |              | Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system. |
|   |   |  <b>Delete</b>               |              | Delete the selected telephone.  |
|   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>              |              | Save the settings.  |
| <br>  | <b>Connected services</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>Transfer rate</b>        |   | <b>Reset</b> | Reset the usage monitor, them confirm.  |
|   |   |  <b>Confirm</b>              |              |   |
| <br><br> | <b>Connected services</b><br>↓<br><b>Secondary page</b><br>↓<br><b>WiFi connection</b>      |  <b>All</b>                  |              | Display all Wi-Fi networks.   |
|   |   |  <b>Secure</b>               |              | Display secure Wi-Fi networks.  |
|   |   |  <b>Stored</b>               |              | Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).                                       |
|   |   |  <b>Add</b>                  |              | Add a new Wi-Fi network.  |
|   |   |  <b>Off/ On</b>              |              | Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.                                       |
|   |   |  <b>Connect</b>              |              | Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.                 |

# MirrorLink™



## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.

As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.

For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

**i** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Please note:

- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.
- iPhone® is not supported yet; an Apple® application, "CarPlay®", is being developed.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



**MirrorLink™**

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an "**Applications**" page is displayed with the list of applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.



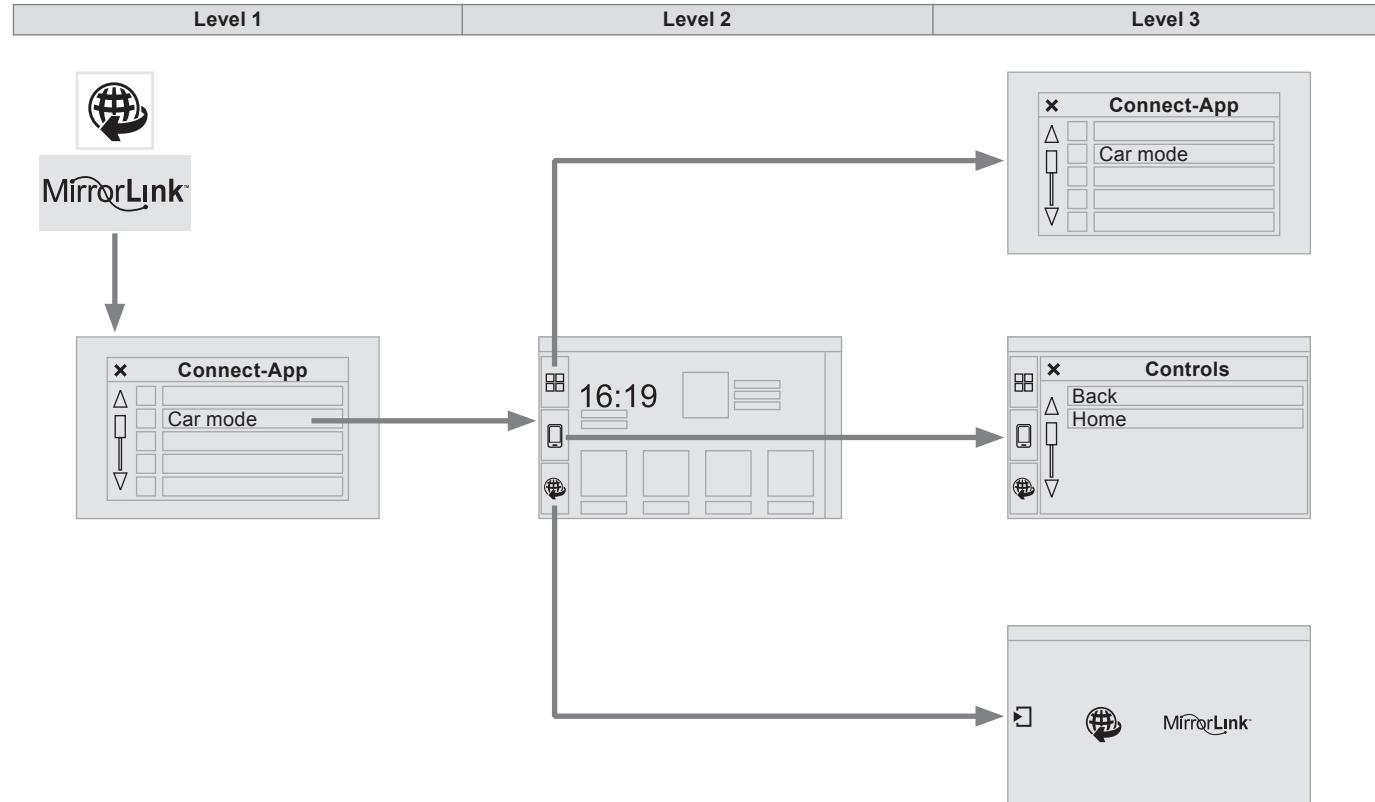
If the smartphone is locked, communication with the system is only by USB cable.

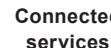
Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

### Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.



| Level 1  | Level 2  | Level 3   | Comments   |
|--|--|---|--|
| <br><b>MirrorLink</b> | <br><b>Connected services</b><br><br><b>MirrorLink™</b><br><br><b>Connect-App</b> | <br><b>Car mode</b>  | <br><b>Connect-App</b> <p>Access or return to the list of applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.</p> |
|  |  | <br><b>Controls</b> <p>"Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level.<br/>   "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.</p> |  |
|  |  |    | <p>Access to the "Connected services" primary page.</p>  |